



High Availability Guide for
SGI® InfiniteStorage™

007-5617-010

COPYRIGHT

© 2010–2014 Silicon Graphics International Corp. All rights reserved; provided portions may be copyright in third parties, as indicated elsewhere herein. No permission is granted to copy, distribute, or create derivative works from the contents of this electronic documentation in any manner, in whole or in part, without the prior written permission of SGI.

LIMITED RIGHTS LEGEND

The software described in this document is "commercial computer software" provided with restricted rights (except as to included open/free source) as specified in the FAR 52.227-19 and/or the DFAR 227.7202, or successive sections. Use beyond license provisions is a violation of worldwide intellectual property laws, treaties and conventions. This document is provided with limited rights as defined in 52.227-14.

TRADEMARKS AND ATTRIBUTIONS

DMF, CXFS, SGI, SGI InfiniteStorage, SGI OpenVault, the SGI logo, Supportfolio, and XFS are trademarks or registered trademarks of Silicon Graphics International Corp. or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries. SLES and SUSE are registered trademarks of SUSE LLC in the United States and other countries. Red Hat and all Red Hat-based trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks mentioned herein are the property of their respective owners.

New Features in this Guide

This revision has been reorganized so that details for a given resource are centralized in a chapter specific to that resource. It also contains additional corrections.

Record of Revision

Version	Description
001	July 2010 Original publication, supporting the SGI® InfiniteStorage Software Platform (ISSP) 2.1 release
002	September 2010 Revision to support ISSP 2.2
003	January 2011 Revision to support ISSP 2.3
004	April 2011 Revision to support ISSP 2.4
005	October 2011 Revision to support ISSP 2.5
006	April 2012 Revision to support ISSP 2.6
007	April 2013 Revision to support ISSP 3.0
008	February 2014 Revision to support ISSP 3.1
009	May 2014 Revision to support ISSP 3.2
010	November 2014 Revision to support ISSP 3.3

Contents

About This Guide	xxiii
Scope of this Guide	xxiii
Related SGI Publications	xxiv
Obtaining SGI Publications	xxiv
Conventions	xxv
Reader Comments	xxvii
1. Introduction	1
High Availability Overview	1
SGI Resource Agents and RPMs	2
Supported HA Services	3
CXFS NFS Edge-Serving Failover	4
DMF Failover	6
COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service Failover	7
Outline of the Configuration Procedure	10
2. Best Practices	15
Best Practices Before Introducing HA	15
Ensure the System is Ready	15
Use a Separate Filesystem for CXFS NFS State Information	16
Use Consistent Virtual Hostnames	16
Ensure that the Debug RPM Matches the Kernel	16
Use the Correct CXFS Fail Policy in a DMF HA Service	16
Best Practices for Configuring and Testing	17
Use the Resource Templates	17
007-5617-010	vii

Template Location	18
Use the Templates as Building Blocks	18
Resource Format	18
Values You Can Change	19
Values You Cannot Change	19
Conventions for Resource Instance IDs	19
Operations	21
Timeout Values	22
Meta Attributes	22
Use the Appropriate Tools	22
Use the <code>crm(8)</code> Command for Configuration, Status, and Control	23
Use the <code>crm_verify</code> Command to Verify Configuration	24
Get More Information by Increasing Verbosity	24
Examine Log Files	24
Avoid Unnecessary Failovers	24
Always use STONITH	25
Use One Group for a DMF HA Environment	25
Examine the Use of Stickiness and Thresholds	25
Additional Resources to Consider	26
MailTo Resource	26
ping Resource	26
Best Practices for Administration	26
Make a Backup Copy of the CIB	27
Monitor Status Information for Problems	27
Clear Failcount Values After Resolving the Problem	27
Remove Implicit Constraints after Explicitly Moving a Resource	28
Set the Core Membership Timeout Value Appropriately	28
Upgrade Appropriately	29

Do Not Use an Edge-Serving Node as an NFS Client	29
Include the PID in Core Files	29
Best Practices for Maintenance	30
Questions to Ask Before Performing Maintenance	30
Hardware Maintenance	30
System Software Updates	31
ISSP Software Updates	31
Changes Permitted on a Running Resource	31
Changes that Require Maintenance Mode	31
Changes that Require a Full Cluster Outage	32
3. General Requirements	33
HA Support Requirements	33
Licensing Requirements	33
Software Version Requirements	34
Hardware Requirements	34
System Reset Requirements	34
Time Synchronization Requirements	34
4. Create the Base HA Cluster	35
Install the HA Software	35
Enable Multicasting on the Ethernet Switch	36
Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment	36
RHEL: Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment	36
SLES: Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment	40
Test the Base HA Cluster	42
Create the ISSP HA Service	43
5. Create the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service	45

Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service	45
Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment	47
Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational	47
Stop Services Before Applying an HA Environment	47
Ensure that the NFS Lock Services are Started (<i>RHEL only</i>)	49
Copy the <code>/etc/exports</code> Entries	49
Create the Clone	49
Test the Clone	50
Create the IP Address Alias Group Resources	53
Test Each IP Address Alias Group	55
Confirm the Completed Status	58
Put the HA Service into Production Mode	59
6. Create the DMF HA Service	61
Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service	61
Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment	64
Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational	64
Stop Services Related to DMF Before Applying an HA Environment	64
Add the Resources in the Correct Order	66
Confirm the Completed Status	66
Put the DMF HA Service into Production Mode	66
7. Create the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service	67
Map of Resources for the COPAN MAID OpenVault HA Service	67
Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment	68
Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational	68
Stop the <code>cxfs_client</code> and <code>openvault</code> Services Before Applying an HA Environment	69
Disable the Parallel Data-Mover Nodes and the Services	69

Create the OpenVault Components on the Failover Node	70
Create and Test the HA Service	72
Confirm the Completed Status	75
Put the HA Service into Production Mode	75
8. Create the Fencing Capability	77
Create the STONITH Facility	77
RHEL STONITH	77
SLES STONITH	78
Enable Node-Level Fencing	78
Test the STONITH Facility	79
Remove Constraints	79
9. copan_ov_client Resource	81
COPAN MAID Requirements	81
COPAN MAID Requirements in Any HA Cluster	81
COPAN MAID Requirements in a DMF HA Cluster	82
COPAN MAID Requirements in a Mover-Node HA Cluster	82
Test the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client Before Applying an HA Environment	83
Stop the <code>openvault</code> Service Before Applying an HA Environment	84
Create the OpenVault Components on the Passive Node	84
Configure COPAN MAID OpenVault Client for High Availability	86
<code>copan_ov_client</code> Template Reference	89
10. cxfs Resource	93
CXFS Requirements	93
CXFS Server-Capable Administration Nodes	93
CXFS Relocation Support	94
Applications that Depend Upon CXFS Filesystems	94

CXFS and System Reset	94
CXFS Start/Stop Issues	95
CXFS Volumes and Filesystems Managed by DMF	95
Test CXFS Before Applying an HA Environment	95
Do Not Stop the <code>cxfs</code> and <code>cxfs_cluster</code> Services Before Applying an HA Environment	96
<code>cxfs</code> Template Reference	96
11. <code>cxfs-client</code> Resource	99
Test the CXFS Client Before Applying an HA Environment	99
Stop the <code>cxfs_client</code> Service Before Applying an HA Environment	99
<code>cxfs-client</code> Template Reference	100
12. <code>cxfs-client-clone</code> Resource	103
No Preliminary Testing Required	103
<code>cxfs-client-clone</code> Template Reference	103
13. <code>cxfs-client-nfsserver</code> Resource	105
CXFS NFS Edge-Serving Requirements	105
Additional Requirements for Multiple Edge-Serving HA Clusters	107
Test the NFS Edge Service Before Applying an HA Environment	108
Stop the NFS Service Before Applying an HA Environment	109
<code>cxfs-client-nfsserver</code> Template Reference	110
14. <code>cxfs-client-smnotify</code> Resource	113
No Preliminary Testing Required	113
<code>cxfs-client-smnotify</code> Template Reference	113
15. <code>cxfs-nfs-clone</code> Resource	117
No Preliminary Testing Required	117

<code>cxfs-nfs-clone</code> Template Reference	117
16. DMF-GROUP Resource	119
No Preliminary Testing Required	119
DMF-GROUP for the CXFS Environment	119
DMF-GROUP for the Local XVM Environment	121
DMF-GROUP Template Reference	122
17. <code>dmf</code> Resource	123
DMF Requirements	123
Test DMF Before Applying an HA Environment	125
Stop the <code>dmf</code> Service Before Applying an HA Environment	126
Configure DMF an HA Environment	126
<code>dmf</code> Template Reference	131
18. <code>dmfman</code> Resource	133
DMF Manager Requirements	133
Test DMF Manager Before Applying an HA Environment	133
Stop the <code>dmfman</code> Service Before Applying an HA Environment	133
Configure DMF Manager for an HA Environment	134
<code>dmfman</code> Template Reference	136
19. <code>dmfsoap</code> Resource	139
DMF Client SOAP Service Requirements	139
Test the DMF Client SOAP Service Before Applying an HA Environment	139
Stop the <code>dmfsoap</code> Service Before Applying an HA Environment	139
Configure DMF Client SOAP Service for an HA Environment	140
<code>dmfsoap</code> Template Reference	141

20. fence_ipmilan STONITH Resource for RHEL	143
Test the BMC IP Address Before Applying an HA Environment	143
fence_ipmilan STONITH Template Reference	143
21. Filesystem Resource	145
Local Filesystem Requirements	145
Configuring the Filesystem Resource for High Availability	145
Filesystem Template Reference	147
Filesystem Example for a Managed Filesystem	149
Filesystem Example for the Samba Directory bind-Mounted on /etc/samba	150
22. IPaddr2 Resource	151
IP Address Alias Requirements	151
Configure IP Address Alias for an HA Environment	152
IPaddr2 Template	154
23. ipalias-group Resource	157
No Preliminary Testing Required	157
ipalias-group Template	157
24. ipmi STONITH Resource for SLES	159
Test the BMC IP Address Before Applying an HA Environment	159
ipmi Template Reference	159
25. ping Resource	163
Test the IP Addresses Before Applying an HA Environment	163
ping Template Reference	163
26. lxvm Resource	167
Local XVM Requirements	167

Test Local XVM Before Applying an HA Environment	167
Configure Local XVM for an HA Environment	168
lxvm Template Reference	170
27. mailTo Resource	173
Test the Email Addresses Before Applying an HA Environment	173
MailTo Template Reference	173
28. nfsserver Resource	175
Test the NFS Service for DMF Use Before Applying an HA Environment	175
Stop the NFS Service Before Applying an HA Environment	177
Configure NFS for an HA Environment	177
nfsserver Template Reference	180
29. openvault Resource	183
OpenVault Requirements	183
Test OpenVault Before Applying an HA Environment	184
Stop the openvault Service Before Applying an HA Environment	185
Configure OpenVault for an HA Environment	186
openvault Template Reference	195
30. nmb and smb Resource	199
Samba Requirements	199
Test Samba Before Applying an HA Environment	199
Stop the Samba Services Before Applying an HA Environment	200
Configure Samba for an HA Environment	200
nmb Template Reference	203
smb Template Reference	204

31. tmf Resource	207
TMF Requirements	207
Test the TMF Service Before Applying an HA Environment	207
Optionally Stop the tmf Service Before Applying HA	208
Configure TMF for an HA Environment	208
tmf Template Reference	211
32. winbind Resource	217
Test the Winbind Service Before Applying an HA Environment	217
winbind Template Reference	217
33. Administrative Tasks and Considerations	219
Viewing the Cluster Status	220
Viewing the Cluster Configuration	221
Putting the Cluster into Maintenance Mode	221
Backing Up the CIB	222
Understanding CIFS and NFS in an HA Cluster	222
Reviewing the Log Files	222
Clearing the Resource Failcount	222
Clearing the Resource State on a Node	223
Controlling the Number of Historical Files	223
Changing DMF Configuration Parameters	224
Restarting the OpenVault Server	224
Manually Moving a copan_ov_client Resource	225
Performing a Rolling Upgrade	227
COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service for Mover Nodes Rolling Upgrade	228
CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Rolling Upgrade	229
DMF HA Rolling Upgrade	232

Stopping the Underlying HA Control Services	235
Manually Resetting a Node	236
Hardware Maintenance on a Cluster Node	236
Hardware Maintenance in a COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service	236
Hardware Maintenance in a CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service	239
Hardware Maintenance in a DMF HA Service	240
Maintenance with a Full Cluster Outage	242
Full Outage for COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service on Mover Nodes	243
Full Outage for CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service	245
Full Outage for DMF HA Service	247
34. Troubleshooting	251
Diagnosing Problems	251
Monitor the Status Output	251
Verify the Configuration in Greater Detail	252
Match Status Events To Error Messages	252
Verify chkconfig Settings	252
Off	253
On	253
Optionally On	253
Diagnose the Problem Resource	254
Examine Application-Specific Problems that Impact HA	254
Test the STONITH Capability	254
Gather Troubleshooting Data	255
Collect System Configuration Information	255
Collect System Logs	256
Collect HA Cluster Information	256

Collect SGI Service-Specific Information	257
Generate a Kernel Crash Dump	257
Use SGI Knowledgebase	258
Failover Testing Strategies	258
Corrective Actions	262
Recovering from an Incomplete Failover	262
Recovering from a CIB Corruption	263
Clearing the Failcounts After a Severe Error	263
Glossary	265
Index	273

Figures

Figure 1-1	CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service — Normal State	4
Figure 1-2	CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service — After Failover	5
Figure 1-3	DMF HA Service — Normal State	6
Figure 1-4	DMF HA Service — After Failover	7
Figure 1-5	COPAN OpenVault Client HA Service for Mover Nodes — Normal State	8
Figure 1-6	COPAN OpenVault Client HA Service for Mover Nodes — After Failover	9
Figure 1-7	Map of the Configuration Procedure	11
Figure 5-1	Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service	46
Figure 6-1	Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service	62
Figure 7-1	Map of Resources for the COPAN MAID OpenVault HA Service	68
Figure 13-1	Two NFS Edge-Serving HA Clusters	107

Tables

Table 1-1	SIG Resource Agents in the <code>sgi-ha-ocf-plugins</code> RPM	2
Table 2-1	Example Instance Names	20
Table 6-1	Order of Resources Used in the DMF HA Service	63
Table 34-1	Failover Tests	260

About This Guide

This publication provides information about creating a high-availability (HA) cluster using SGI[®] resource agents released with SGI InfiniteStorage Software Platform (ISSP) products. The resource agents are used with the Corosync and Pacemaker products, which are provided with the following:

- Red Hat[®] Enterprise Linux High Availability Add-On
- SUSE[®] Linux[®] Enterprise High Availability Extension

Scope of this Guide

This guide describes the use of SGI resource agents. It does not provide details about configuring an HA cluster; for those details, see the following:

- Pacemaker information for either RHEL or SLES clusters:

http://clusterlabs.org/doc/en-US/Pacemaker/1.1-plugin/html-single/Pacemaker_Explained/index.html

- RHEL only:

- Clusterlabs quick start guide for RHEL:

<http://clusterlabs.org/quickstart-redhat.html>

- RHEL Add-On documentation:

https://access.redhat.com/site/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux/6/html/High_Availability_Add-On_Overview/index.html

Note: The information about RGmanager does not apply to the ISSP implementation, which uses Pacemaker.

- SUSE only:

High Availability Guide provided by the following website:

http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle_ha/

Related SGI Publications

The following SGI publications contain additional information:

- *CXFS 7 Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage*
- *CXFS 7 Client-Only Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage*
- *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*
- *DMF 6 Filesystem Audit Guide*
- *OpenVault Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage*
- *SGI InfiniteStorage Software Platform (ISSP) release note (README.txt)*
- *TMF 6 Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage*
- *XVM Volume Manager Administrator Guide*
- The hardware guide for your SGI server

Obtaining SGI Publications

You can obtain SGI documentation as follows:

- See the SGI Technical Publications Library at <http://docs.sgi.com>. Various formats are available. This library contains the most recent and most comprehensive set of online books, man pages, and other information.
- You can view man pages by typing `man title` at a command line.
- The `/docs` directory on the ISSP DVD or in the Supportfolio™ download directory contains the following:
 - The ISSP release note: `/docs/README.txt`
 - Other release notes: `/docs/README_NAME.txt`
 - A complete list of the packages and their location on the media:
`/docs/RPMS.txt`
 - The packages and their respective licenses: `/docs/PACKAGE_LICENSES.txt`

- The release notes and manuals are provided in the `noarch/sgi-isspdocs` RPM and will be installed on the system into the following location:

`/usr/share/doc/packages/sgi-issp-ISSPVERSION/TITLE`

Conventions

The following conventions are used throughout this document:

Convention	Meaning
<code>command</code>	This fixed-space font denotes literal items such as commands, files, routines, path names, signals, messages, and programming language structures.
<i>variable</i>	Italic typeface denotes variable entries and words or concepts being defined.
user input	This bold, fixed-space font denotes literal items that the user enters in interactive sessions. (Output is shown in nonbold, fixed-space font.)
[]	Brackets enclose optional portions of a command or directive line.
...	Ellipses indicate that a preceding element can be repeated.
<code>manpage(x)</code>	Man page section identifiers appear in parentheses after man page names.
<code>cxfsclient#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on a CXFS client-only node
<code>cxfsserver#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on a CXFS server-capable administration node
<code>dmfserver#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on a DMF server
<code>downnode#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on the HA node that requires maintenance
<code>ha#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on any node that is or will be in the HA cluster

<code>nfsclient#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on an NFS client outside of the HA cluster
<code>node1#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on <code>node1</code> , a node that is or will be in the HA cluster
<code>node2#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on <code>node2</code> , a node that is or will be in the HA cluster
<code>otherhost#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on machine outside of the HA cluster
<code>mover#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on a DMF parallel data-mover node
<code>mover1#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on <code>mover1</code> (analogous to <code>node1</code>), a node that is or will be in the HA cluster
<code>mover2#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on <code>mover2</code> (analogous to <code>node2</code>), a node that is or will be in the HA cluster
<code>upnode#</code>	This prompt indicates that the example command is executed on the HA node that does not require maintenance

Reader Comments

If you have comments about the technical accuracy, content, or organization of this publication, contact SGI. Be sure to include the title and document number of the publication with your comments. (Online, the document number is located in the front matter of the publication. In printed publications, the document number is located at the bottom of each page.)

You can contact SGI in either of the following ways:

- Send e-mail to the following address:
techpubs@sgi.com
- Contact your customer service representative and ask that an incident be filed in the SGI incident tracking system:
<http://www.sgi.com/support/supportcenters.html>

SGI values your comments and will respond to them promptly.

Introduction

This chapter discusses the following:

- "High Availability Overview" on page 1
- "SGI Resource Agents and RPMs" on page 2
- "Supported HA Services" on page 3
- "Outline of the Configuration Procedure" on page 10

High Availability Overview

For SGI InfiniteStorage Software Platform (ISSP) products, the Corosync and Pacemaker products provide the infrastructure to keep managed resources highly available. The high-availability (HA) software is designed to fail over resources from one node to another, so that they survive a single point of failure:

- A *resource* is an application that is managed by HA software according to its definition in the HA *cluster information base* (CIB) and the use of a resource agent
- A *resource agent* is software that allows an application to be highly available without modifying the application itself
- A *resource group* is a set of resources that must be managed and failed over as a set from one node to another
- A *clone* allows a resource to run simultaneously on multiple nodes
- An *HA service* is the aggregate functionality provided by individual resources, resource groups, and clone resources that are configured together, and is usually associated with an IP address

The HA software starts, monitors, and stops resources and entire HA services. The underlying *control services* differ by operating system:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL):
 - CMAN
 - Corosync

- Pacemaker
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES®):
 - OpenAIS
 - Corosync
 - Pacemaker

Each HA service is actively owned by one node. The HA software uses the IP address associated with each HA service to direct clients to the node currently running the service. If that node fails, an alternate node restarts the HA services of the failed node. To application clients, the services on the alternate node are indistinguishable from those on the original node.

SGI Resource Agents and RPMs

Table 1-1 lists the Open Cluster Framework (OCF) resource agents specific to SGI ISSP products and the associated templates that help you configure individual resources.

For information about software installation, see the ISSP release note and Chapter 4, "Create the Base HA Cluster" on page 35.

Table 1-1 SGI Resource Agents in the `sgi-ha-ocf-plugins` RPM

Resource Agent	Description
<code>copan_ov_client</code>	COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service for parallel data-mover nodes and SGI DMF™ tiered-storage virtualization servers. See " <code>copan_ov_client</code> Template Reference" on page 89.
<code>cxfs</code>	CXFS™ filesystems whose metadata server location must follow the location of another resource, such as DMF or NFS. See " <code>cxfs</code> Template Reference" on page 96.
<code>cxfs-client</code>	CXFS filesystems (mounted on a CXFS client-only node) that are required to support another resource, such as those to be NFS-served from a CXFS client-only node or those used for a DMF parallel data-mover node. See " <code>cxfs-client</code> Template Reference" on page 100.

Resource Agent	Description
<code>cxfs-client-nfssserver</code>	NFS server on a CXFS client-only node. See " <code>cxfs-client-nfssserver</code> Template Reference" on page 110.
<code>cxfs-client-smnotify</code>	Network Status Monitor (NSM) lock reclaim notification on a CXFS client-only node. See " <code>cxfs-client-smnotify</code> Template Reference" on page 113.
<code>dmf</code>	DMF server. See " <code>dmf</code> Template Reference" on page 131.
<code>dmfman</code>	DMF Manager tool. See " <code>dmfman</code> Template Reference" on page 136.
<code>dmfsoap</code>	DMF client Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) service. See " <code>dmfsoap</code> Template Reference" on page 141.
<code>lxvm</code>	Local XVM volume manager. See " <code>lxvm</code> Template Reference" on page 170.
<code>openvault</code>	OpenVault mounting service for DMF. See " <code>openvault</code> Template Reference" on page 195.
<code>tmf</code>	Tape Management Facility (TMF) mounting service for DMF. See " <code>tmf</code> Template Reference" on page 211.

SGI also provides additional templates that may be of interest in `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates`.

Supported HA Services

Although the SGI resource agents can be used independently, this guide provides example procedures to configure the following HA services:

- CXFS NFS edge-serving from CXFS client-only nodes in a two-node active/active HA cluster. See "CXFS NFS Edge-Serving Failover" on page 4.
- DMF in a two-node active/passive HA cluster (which can optionally include COPAN MAID shelves). See "DMF Failover" on page 6.
- COPAN MAID shelves in an active/active HA cluster that consists of two DMF parallel data-mover nodes. See "COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service Failover" on page 7.

Although other configurations may be possible, SGI recommends the above HA environments.

Note: The attributes and the various value recommendations listed in this guide are in support of the examples used in this guide. If you are using the resources in a different manner, you must evaluate whether these recommendations and use of meta attributes apply to your intended site-specific purpose.

CXFS NFS Edge-Serving Failover

Figure 1-1 and Figure 1-2 describe an example process of failing over a CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service in a two-node active/active HA cluster.

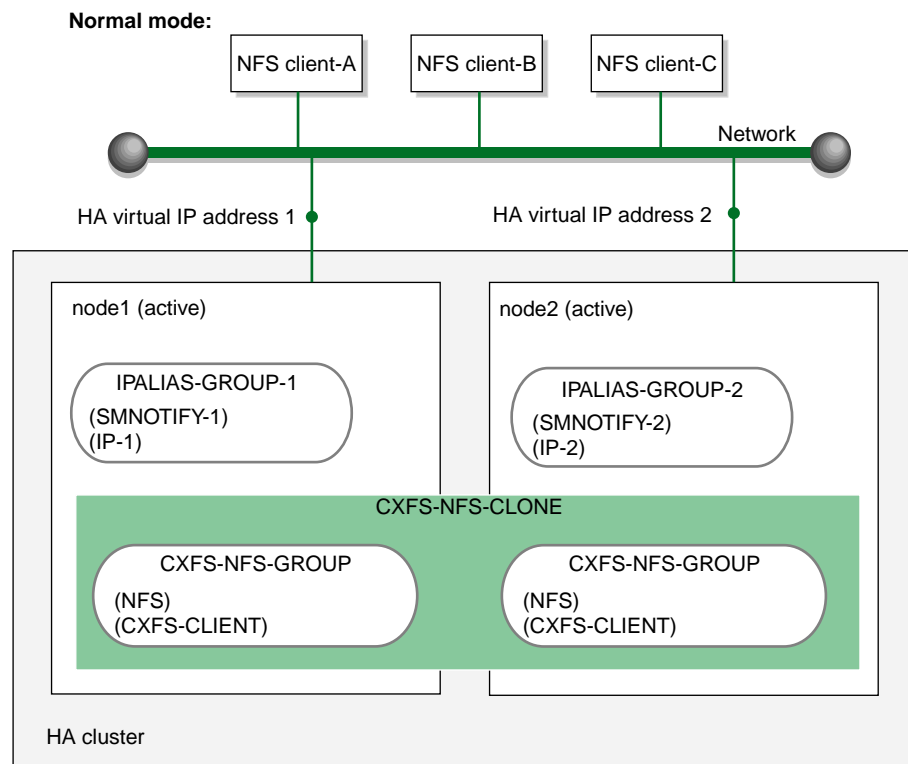


Figure 1-1 CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service — Normal State

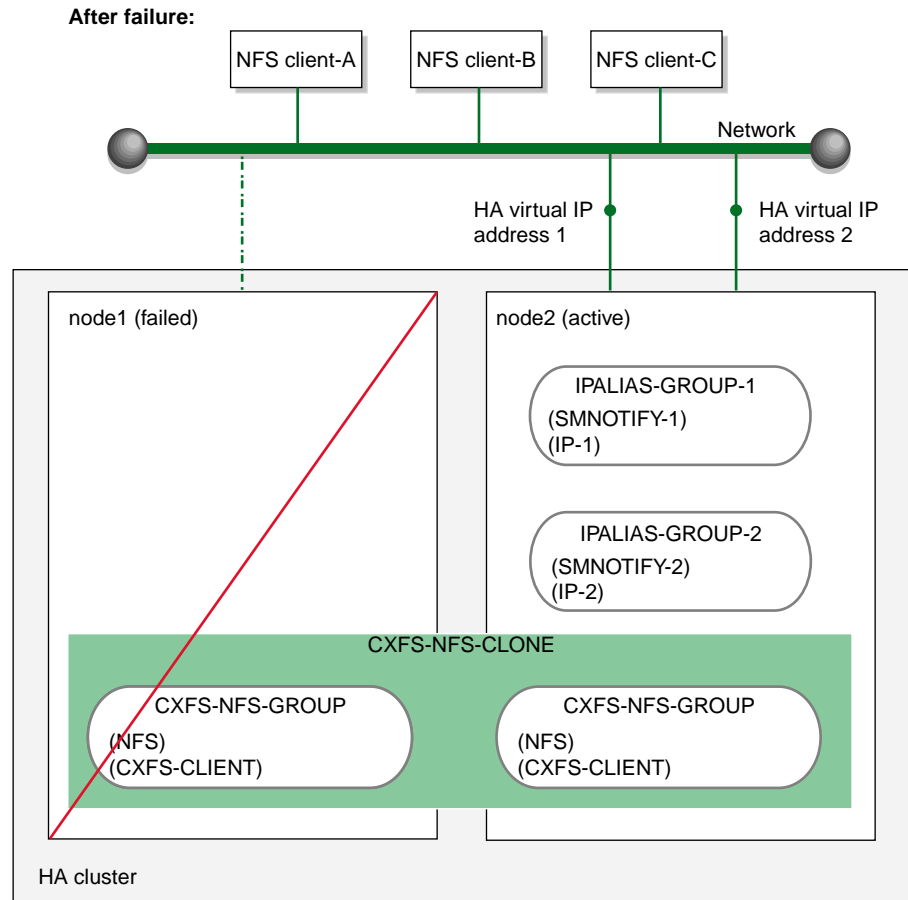


Figure 1-2 CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service — After Failover

In this configuration, each CXFS filesystem is a single point of failure for the HA cluster. Therefore, you may want to consider using a separate HA cluster for each filesystem in order to reduce the possibility of cluster failure while maintaining filesystem bandwidth scalability. However, this also introduces more complexity.

Note: If you have multiple CXFS NFS edge-serving HA clusters within a single CXFS cluster, certain values must be unique to each HA cluster while others must be common across all of them. See "Additional Requirements for Multiple Edge-Serving HA Clusters" on page 107.

DMF Failover

Figure 1-3 and Figure 1-4 describe an example process of failing over a DMF HA service in a two-node active/passive HA cluster.

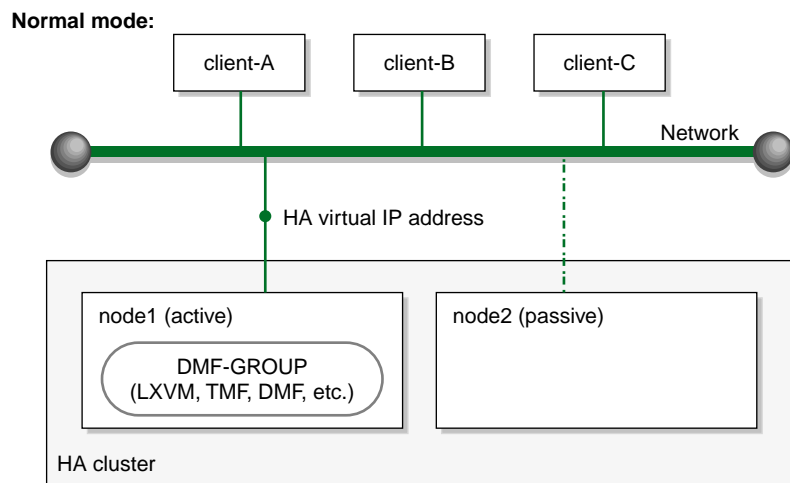


Figure 1-3 DMF HA Service — Normal State

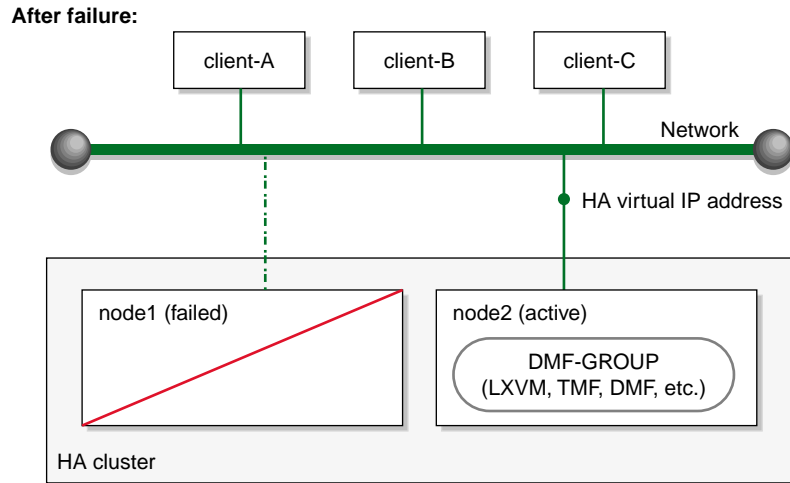


Figure 1-4 DMF HA Service — After Failover

COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service Failover

Figure 1-5 and Figure 1-6 describe an example process of failing over the OpenVault client service for a COPAN MAID shelf in a two-node active/active HA cluster (consisting of two parallel data-mover nodes).

At initialization, each parallel data-mover node is the default owner node of two COPAN OpenVault client resources, as represented in the dark lines in Figure 1-5 (where `mover1` is the owner node of shelves 0 and 1, and `mover2` is the owner node of shelves 2 and 3).

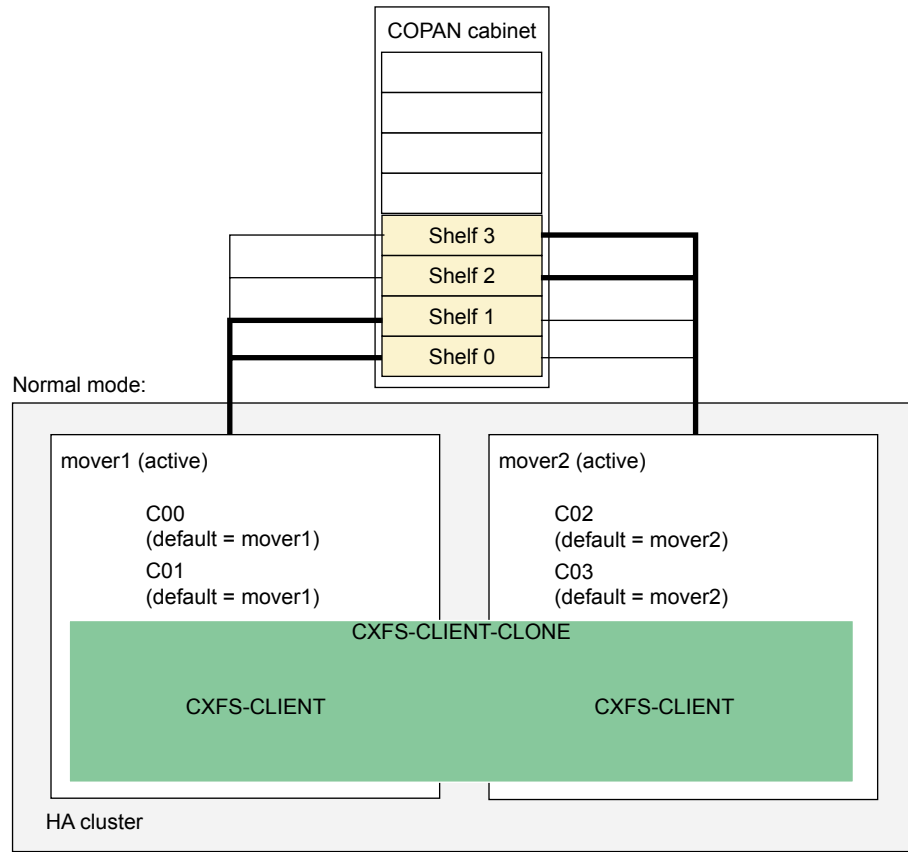


Figure 1-5 COPAN OpenVault Client HA Service for Mover Nodes — Normal State

When `mover1` fails, its COPAN OpenVault client resources move to `mover2` and `mover2` becomes the current owner node of all of the shelves, as shown in Figure 1-6.

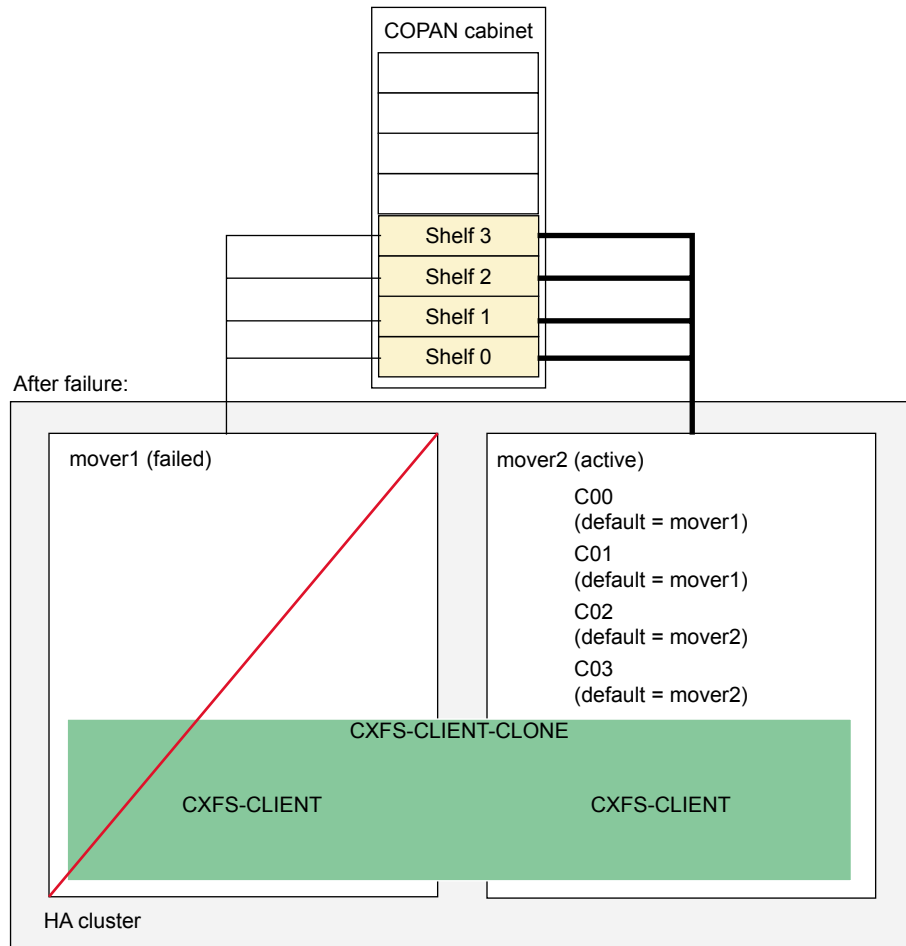


Figure 1-6 COPAN OpenVault Client HA Service for Mover Nodes — After Failover

After `mover1` recovers and rejoins the HA cluster, you can choose a convenient time to manually move `C00` and `C01` back to `mover1` to balance the load and return the HA cluster to its normal state (see "Manually Moving a `copan_ov_client` Resource" on page 225). You should perform this procedure during a time of low shelf activity, because moving a `copan_ov_client` resource involves disabling the active node via the `dmnode_admin` command (which results in stopping all activity to all shelves owned by the node).

Outline of the Configuration Procedure

Figure 1-7 summarizes the recommended steps to configure a two-node HA cluster for use with SGI InfiniteStorage products, pointing to the release notes or other chapters in this guide that provide the details:

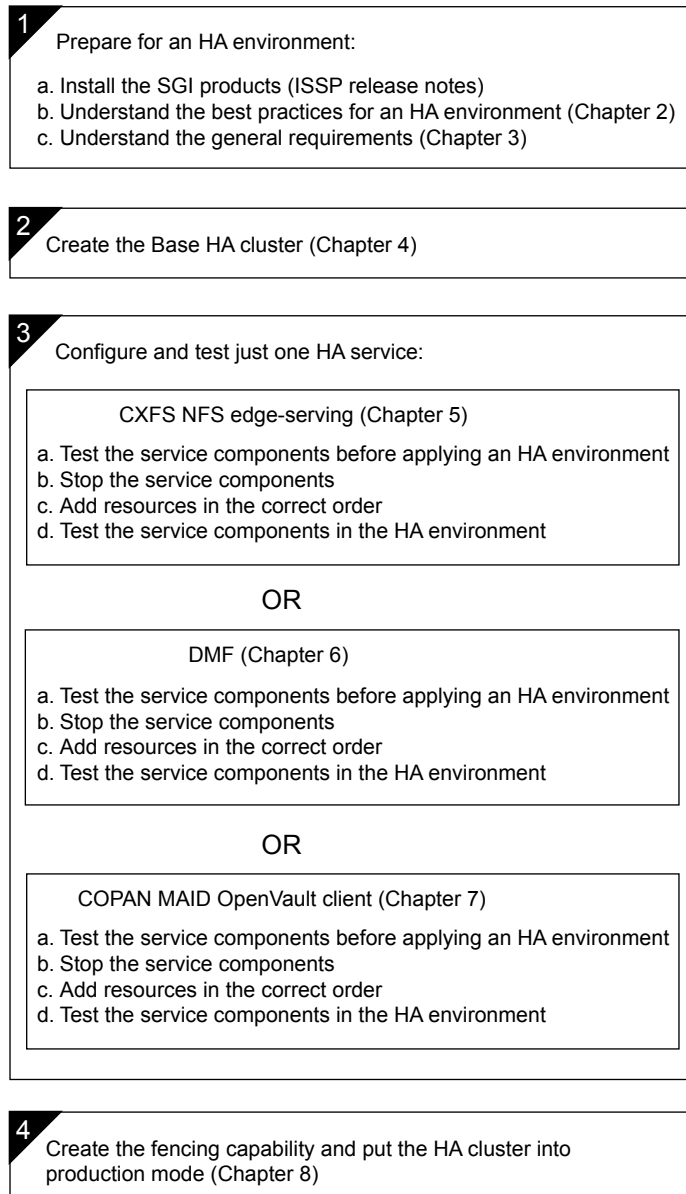


Figure 1-7 Map of the Configuration Procedure

Do the following:

1. Prepare for an HA environment:
 - a. Ensure that you have installed the required SGI products on `node1` and `node2` according to the installation procedure in the *SGI InfiniteStorage Software Platform Release Note*.
 - b. Understand the recommendations for preparation, configuration, testing, and administration of an HA environment. See Chapter 2, "Best Practices" on page 15.
 - c. Understand the general requirements for an HA environment. See Chapter 3, "General Requirements" on page 33.
2. Install the HA software and create the base HA cluster. See Chapter 4, "Create the Base HA Cluster" on page 35.
3. Configure and test each of the individual resources required for **just one** of the following HA services:
 - Chapter 5, "Create the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45
 - Chapter 6, "Create the DMF HA Service" on page 61
 - Chapter 7, "Create the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service" on page 67

Note: If you are implementing multiple HA services, you should complete the entire process for just one HA service before adding another HA cluster for another HA service. You must configure individual resources for a given HA service in the order shown in the procedure.

In general, the procedure to create an HA service is as follows:

- a. Test the service components in a non-HA environment (to reduce complexity)
- b. Stop the service components (so that they can be controlled by the HA software instead)
- c. Add the resources in the correct order, as documented
- d. Test the service components in the HA environment

4. Put the HA cluster into production mode by creating the STONITH (*shoot the other node in the head*) facility, reenabling node-level fencing, testing, and removing any resulting constraints. See Chapter 8, "Create the Fencing Capability" on page 77.

Best Practices

The following are best practices when using SGI resource agents:

- "Best Practices Before Introducing HA" on page 15
- "Best Practices for Configuring and Testing" on page 17
- "Best Practices for Administration" on page 26
- "Best Practices for Maintenance" on page 30

Best Practices Before Introducing HA

The following are best practices for your environment before introducing HA:

- "Ensure the System is Ready" on page 15
- "Use a Separate Filesystem for CXFS NFS State Information" on page 16
- "Use Consistent Virtual Hostnames" on page 16
- "Ensure that the Debug RPM Matches the Kernel" on page 16
- "Use the Correct CXFS Fail Policy in a DMF HA Service" on page 16

Ensure the System is Ready

Do the following:

- Fix networking issues first.
- Make your overall system configuration as simple as possible — complexity makes HA harder to achieve.
- Use redundancy in your system components to avoid single points of failure.
- Perform regular and frequent system backups.
- Configure and test the services (like DMF) before making them highly available, which will make problems easier to diagnose.

You should configure and test all services before applying HA. In general, you should do this on one host (known in this guide as *node1* or *mover1*). This host will later become a node in the HA cluster, on which all of the filesystems will be mounted and on which all drives and libraries are accessible.

After the services are stable, you can configure and test the base HA cluster before adding the SGI resources. You should review Chapter 4, "Create the Base HA Cluster" on page 35, and then follow the detailed example steps in the remainder of the guide, as appropriate for your site.

Use a Separate Filesystem for CXFS NFS State Information

For CXFS NFS edge-serving, use a separate shared CXFS filesystem on which to store NFS state information. The state is kept on disk and must be available while any edge-serving nodes are running. A simple setup where only one filesystem is being served via NFS can keep the state directories on the same filesystem that is being served.

Use Consistent Virtual Hostnames

When configuring OpenVault and DMF, be consistent when specifying virtual hostnames, always using either the short hostname (like *myhost*) everywhere or the fully qualified domain name (like *myhost.mycompany.com*) everywhere.

Ensure that the Debug RPM Matches the Kernel

Ensure that the `kernel-default-debuginfo` RPM that matches the kernel is installed on the system. This will let you make the best use of the recommended SGI Support tools in case you must send a kernel crash dump to SGI for troubleshooting purposes.

Use the Correct CXFS Fail Policy in a DMF HA Service

In a DMF HA service, the STONITH facility must manage the server reset capability. Therefore, you must set the CXFS `failpolicy` for the CXFS server-capable administration nodes to `Fence,Shutdown` so that CXFS will not issue its own reset commands. For more information about CXFS `failpolicy` settings, see *CXFS 7 Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage*.

Best Practices for Configuring and Testing

The following are best practices for configuring and testing the HA system:

- "Use the Resource Templates" on page 17
- "Use the Appropriate Tools" on page 22
- "Examine Log Files" on page 24
- "Avoid Unnecessary Failovers" on page 24
- "Always use STONITH" on page 25
- "Use One Group for a DMF HA Environment" on page 25
- "Examine the Use of Stickiness and Thresholds" on page 25
- "Additional Resources to Consider" on page 26

Use the Resource Templates

This section discusses the following:

- "Template Location" on page 18
- "Use the Templates as Building Blocks" on page 18
- "Resource Format" on page 18
- "Values You Can Change" on page 19
- "Values You Cannot Change" on page 19
- "Conventions for Resource Instance IDs" on page 19
- "Operations" on page 21
- "Timeout Values" on page 22
- "Meta Attributes" on page 22

Template Location

SGI provides templates of the resources required to configure an HA cluster in the following location:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/
```

Use the Templates as Building Blocks

You should use the templates as building blocks to construct your HA configuration file, adding one resource at a time and testing it before adding another resource.

You can create a copy of a template in a partial configuration file (referred to as the *workfile*). In general, you should use the values shown in the templates except for the italicized uppercase site-specific variables (most parameters and some timeouts are site-specific). In many cases, you can use the defaults provided for the variables. The comments in the templates provide information about these variables; you must remove all of these comments before loading the *workfile*. You will then run the following command to update the cluster information base (CIB) database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

In general, use a new *workfile* for each resource or as directed in this guide.

Resource Format

In general, the individual resources take the following format:

```
# Comments_about_using_this_resource
#
primitive ID class:provider:type
    op monitor_operation_that_probes_to_see_if_the_resource_is_already_running
    op monitor_operation_that_probes_to_see_if_the_resource_continues_to_run
    op start_operation
    op stop_operation
    params parameters_specific_to_the_resource
    meta attributes_specific_to_the_resource
```



Caution: You must remove all of the comments before loading the work file.

Values You Can Change

Site-specific values that you may want to change are in uppercase in the template files. In this guide, they are highlighted in bold-italic uppercase (such as ***REPLACE_THIS***). In many cases, you can use the defaults provided; see the comments for more information.

Values You Cannot Change

The *class*, *provider*, and *type* shown in "Resource Format" on page 18 must use the exact values provided in the templates. Most *type* names are lowercase, but some are mixed case. The names are listed under `/usr/lib/ocf/resource.d/provider`.

Conventions for Resource Instance IDs

The suggested IDs for all resource *primitive* instances, *clone* instances, and *group* instances provided in the templates are site-changeable. You should choose IDs that are meaningful to your site; for simplicity, you may want to retain the defaults provided in the templates unless otherwise directed. By convention, the templates use the example instance IDs shown in Table 2-1.

All IDs should be unique within a given HA cluster; if there are multiple instances of the same *type*, each ID must be unique (such as two resources of type `IPaddr2` with individual instance IDs of `IP-1` and `IP-2`). Within this guide and in the templates, individual instance names are shown in uppercase by convention.

If you change an ID, you must ensure that the new name is used correctly elsewhere within constraints or groups as needed. You should use a unique ID for each resource, whether it is a *clone*, *group*, or *primitive* resource. Do not use spaces in resource IDs because this may cause HA software or other supporting software to behave in a confusing manner.

Table 2-1 Example Instance Names

Primitive/Group/Clone Type	Example Instance Name
copan_ov_client	<i>SHELF</i> , such as C00 for the COPAN MAID cabinet 0, shelf 0 (the bottom shelf)
cxfs	CXFS
cxfs-client	CXFS-CLIENT
clone	CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE
cxfs-client-nfsserver	NFS
cxfs-client-smnotify	SMNOTIFY- <i>x</i> , such as SMNOTIFY-1 and SMNOTIFY-2
dmf	DMF
dmfman	DMFMAN
dmfsoap	DMFSOAP
group	DMF-GROUP IPALIAS-GROUP- <i>X</i> , such as IPALIAS-GROUP-1 and IPALIAS-GROUP-2
fence-ipmilan	STONITH- <i>NODENAME</i> , such as STONITH-node1 (RHEL)
Filesystem	<i>FILESYSTEM</i> , such as dmfsusr1, spool, or etc_samba
IPAddr2	IP or IP-1
ipmi	STONITH- <i>NODENAME</i> , such as STONITH-node1 (SLES)
lxvm	LXVM
MailTo	NOTIFY
nfsserver	NFS
nmb	NMB
openvault	OV
ping	PING
smb	SMB
tmf	TMF
winbind	WINBIND

Operations

Note the following:

- A `monitor` operation determines if the resource is operating correctly:
 - A *probe* `monitor` operation (which always uses an `interval` value of 0) checks to see if the resource is already running.
 - A *standard* `monitor` operation periodically verifies that the resource continues to run. Each operation will time-out after the specified number of seconds. If the operation fails, it will attempt to restart the resource.
-

Note: Always use a `probe monitor` operation, even if you do not use a `standard monitor` operation.

- The `start` operation initiates a resource. It will time-out after a specified time. It requires that `fencing` is configured and active in order to start the resource. Using `system reset` as a fencing method is required in order to preserve data integrity. If the operation fails, it will attempt to restart the resource.
-

Note: *Fencing* in HA terminology (node-level fencing) is not the same as *fencing* in CXFS terminology (I/O-level fencing).

- A `stop` operation terminates or gives up control of a resource. It will time-out after the specified time. If the operation fails, it will attempt to fence the node on which the failure occurred. The fail policy must be set to `fence` and a STONITH (“*shoot the other node in the head*”) facility must be configured according to the requirements for your site. See:
 - RHEL: “`fence_ipmilan` STONITH Template Reference” on page 143
 - SLES: “`ipmi` Template Reference” on page 159
-

Note: Longer `stop` operation timeouts may result in longer failover times, and shorter `stop` operation timeouts may result in more frequent system reset events.

Timeout Values

The various `timeout` values provided in the templates are good starting points, but you should evaluate their use at your site.

Meta Attributes

Note the following:

- `migration-threshold` specifies a count of failures at which the current node will receive a score of `-INFINITY` so that the resource must fail over to another node and is not eligible for restart on the local node, based on the number of `start`, `monitor`, or `stop` failures that this resource has experienced.
- `resource-stickiness` specifies a score for the preference to keep this resource on the node on which it is currently running. A positive value specifies a preference for the resource to remain on the node on which it is currently running. This preference may only be overridden if the node becomes ineligible to run the resource (if the node fails over) or if there is a `start`, `monitor`, or `stop` failure for this resource or another resource in the same resource group.

Use the Appropriate Tools

This section discusses the following:

- "Use the `crm(8)` Command for Configuration, Status, and Control" on page 23
- "Use the `crm_verify` Command to Verify Configuration" on page 24
- "Get More Information by Increasing Verbosity" on page 24

Use the `crm(8)` Command for Configuration, Status, and Control

Use the `crm(8)` command to configure, to obtain status, and to perform administrative actions. To invoke the command, do the following:

```
# /usr/sbin/crm
```

For more details, enter `help` or `help subcommand`. For example:

```
# /usr/sbin/crm
crm(live)# help
```

This is `crm` shell, a Pacemaker command line interface.

Available commands:

<code>cib</code>	manage shadow CIBs
<code>resource</code>	resources management
<code>configure</code>	CRM cluster configuration
<code>node</code>	nodes management
<code>options</code>	user preferences
<code>history</code>	CRM cluster history
<code>site</code>	Geo-cluster support
<code>ra</code>	resource agents information center
<code>status</code>	show cluster status
<code>help,?</code>	show help (help topics for list of topics)
<code>end,cd,up</code>	go back one level
<code>quit,bye,exit</code>	exit the program

```
crm(live)# help cib
```

A shadow CIB is a regular cluster configuration which is kept in a file. The CRM and the CRM tools may manage a shadow CIB in the same way as the live CIB (i.e. the current cluster configuration). A shadow CIB may be applied to the cluster in one step.

Note: Red Hat does not supply the `crm(8)` command. Therefore, the SGI ISSP HA software supplies this tool for RHEL customers. RHEL customers must use this version of `crm` for cluster resource configuration.

Use the `crm_verify` Command to Verify Configuration

Use the following command to verify changes you make to the CIB, after each resource primitive that you define:

```
ha# crm_verify -LV
```

For more information, see the `pacemaker(8)` man page.

Note: The `crm configure verify` command is not equivalent to the `crm_verify` command.

Get More Information by Increasing Verbosity

To get more information, you may add multiple `-v` options to many of the HA commands in order to increase verbosity. For example:

```
ha# crm_verify -LVVV
```

Examine Log Files

You should regularly examine the following log files:

- RHEL:
`/var/log/cluster/corosync.log` (primary RHEL HA log file)
`/var/log/messages`
- SLES:
`/var/log/messages`

Avoid Unnecessary Failovers

This guide provides some starting points for monitoring values, but you should test these values under typical load for your site to determine if they are appropriate for your use. In some cases, you may wish to avoid monitoring other than probe monitoring (probe monitoring is always appropriate).

To prevent a given resource from being monitored and possibly triggering failovers, do not define a standard `monitor` operation (see "Operations" on page 21). This may be particularly useful for those resources that are not critical (such as DMF Manager)

but should still move with the rest of the resource group or for those resources that have an alternative method for monitoring. You can also make timeout values larger to decrease the likelihood of an unnecessary failover.

Do not create explicit `location`, `colocation`, or `order` constraints on an individual resource primitive except as directed in this guide.



Caution: Defining constraints on a resource primitive can lead to a deadlock situation in which the group has conflicting constraints that prevent it from starting anywhere.

Always use STONITH

Always use STONITH node-level fencing to protect data integrity in case of failure:

- RHEL: "fence_ipmilan STONITH Template Reference" on page 143
- SLES: "ipmi Template Reference" on page 159

Use One Group for a DMF HA Environment

For a DMF HA cluster, place each resource primitive within one resource group. The resource group mechanism incorporates implied colocation constraints as well as resource order constraints. This lets you control the resources as a single entity, which greatly simplifies administration.

Examine the Use of Stickiness and Thresholds

You may want to examine the use of the `resource_stickiness` and `migration_threshold` attributes of resources to control how often and to what node failover will occur. The examples in this book result in the individual resource or resource group failing over to the alternate node on the first failure of any of the resource primitives. In this default setting, there is no automatic failback to the original node. For more information about score calculation, see the following website:

http://www.clusterlabs.org/doc/en-US/Pacemaker/1.0/html/Pacemaker_Explained/index.html

Additional Resources to Consider

This section discusses the following:

- "MailTo Resource" on page 26
- "ping Resource" on page 26

MailTo Resource

You may want to consider defining a MailTo resource to implement notification when a given resource starts, stops, or fails over. For more information, see "MailTo Template Reference" on page 173.

ping Resource

The IPaddr2 virtual IP address resource agent monitors the existence of the IP address alias on the interface, but it does not monitor network interface controller (NIC) interface availability. You may want to consider defining a ping resource. For more information, see "ping Template Reference" on page 163, and the information about moving resources due to connectivity changes at the following website:

http://www.clusterlabs.org/doc/en-US/Pacemaker/1.0/html/Pacemaker_Explained/index.html

Best Practices for Administration

The following are best practices for administering the HA cluster:

- "Make a Backup Copy of the CIB" on page 27
- "Monitor Status Information for Problems" on page 27
- "Clear Failcount Values After Resolving the Problem" on page 27
- "Remove Implicit Constraints after Explicitly Moving a Resource" on page 28
- "Set the Core Membership Timeout Value Appropriately" on page 28
- "Upgrade Appropriately" on page 29
- "Do Not Use an Edge-Serving Node as an NFS Client" on page 29
- "Include the PID in Core Files" on page 29

Make a Backup Copy of the CIB

After you have successfully completed the initial configuration, make a backup copy of the working CIB so that you can return to it if necessary after future changes. See:

- "Backing Up the CIB" on page 222
- "Recovering from a CIB Corruption" on page 263

Before making changes to an existing HA environment, ensure that you have a good backup copy of the current CIB. (If you encounter a corrupted CIB, you must erase it by force and then restore the information about resources, constraints, and configuration from a backup copy of a good CIB.)

After you establish that your changed configuration is good, make a new backup of the CIB.

Monitor Status Information for Problems

Periodically watch the output of the following commands for problems:

```
ha# crm status
ha# crm_verify -LV
ha# crm status failcounts
```

For more information, see "Viewing the Cluster Status " on page 220.

Refer to the logs in case of error and periodically to ensure that you are aware of operations automatically initiated by HA software. See "Examine Log Files" on page 24.

Clear Failcount Values After Resolving the Problem

After a failure, clear the resource primitive failcount values for a node immediately after resolving the cause of the failure (or reboot the system). See "Clearing the Resource Failcount" on page 222.

Remove Implicit Constraints after Explicitly Moving a Resource

If you want to move or start a resource (either an individual primitive or a group) on a specific node, enter the following:

```
ha# crm resource move resource node
```

The result of this command is to create a location constraint with a score of INFINITY for the specified resource or resource group on the specified node.

Note: If conflicting constraints already exist, this preference might not be honored.

You must remember to remove implicit constraints when they are no longer needed, such as after the individual resource or resource group has successfully moved to the new node. Do the following:

```
ha# crm resource unmove resource
```

To move the COPAN OpenVault client resource, see "Manually Moving a copan_ov_client Resource" on page 225.

Set the Core Membership Timeout Value Appropriately

Set the HA core membership timeout (`totem token`) value to one that is significantly higher than the CXFS heartbeat timeout. The CXFS heartbeat timeout is set by the `mtcp_hb_period` system tunable parameter (which is specified in hundredths of a second). For more information, see *CXFS 7 Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage*.

To determine the current setting of `mtcp_hb_period`, use the `sysctl(8)` command. For example:

```
# sysctl -a | grep mtcp_hb_period
kernel.cell.mtcp_hb_period = 500
```

In this case, the CXFS heartbeat timeout is 500 (5 seconds), so you would set the HA `totem token` value to at least 15s. If `mtcp_hb_period` was set to 6000 (60 seconds), you would use an `totem token` value of at least 90s.

The default `totem consensus` value is 1.2 times the `totem token` value, which is appropriate for most sites. For example, for the `totem token` value of 90s, the `totem consensus` value is set by default to 108s.

See "Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment" on page 36.

Upgrade Appropriately

When upgrading the software, follow the procedure in "Performing a Rolling Upgrade" on page 227.

Do Not Use an Edge-Serving Node as an NFS Client

Do not use a CXFS NFS edge-serving node running HA software as an NFS client. (The NFS client service on a CXFS NFS edge-serving node does not support monitored locking.)

Include the PID in Core Files

To better analyze problems, consider adding the following directive to the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file on each node in the HA cluster so that core dump files will include the name of the process ID (PID) that caused the dump and the time when the dump occurred:

```
kernel.core_pattern = core.%p.%t
```

Changes made to `/etc/sysctl.conf` will take effect on the next boot and will be persistent. To make the settings effective immediately for the current session as well, enter the following:

```
ha# echo "core.%p.%t" > /proc/sys/kernel/core_pattern
```

Note: Core files are generally placed in the current working directory (`cwd`) of the process that dumped the core file. For example, to locate the core file for a PID of 25478:

```
node1# ps -fp 25478
```

```
UID      PID  PPID  C  STIME TTY          TIME CMD
root    25478 25469  0 Feb02 ?           00:02:40 /usr/lib/heartbeat/stonithd
```

```
node1# ls -l /proc/25478/cwd
```

```
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 0 Mar 2 17:29 /proc/25478/cwd -> /var/lib/heartbeat/cores/root
```

Best Practices for Maintenance

This section discusses the following:

- "Questions to Ask Before Performing Maintenance" on page 30
- "Hardware Maintenance" on page 30
- "System Software Updates" on page 31
- "ISSP Software Updates" on page 31
- "Changes Permitted on a Running Resource" on page 31
- "Changes that Require Maintenance Mode" on page 31
- "Changes that Require a Full Cluster Outage" on page 32

Questions to Ask Before Performing Maintenance

Before performing maintenance tasks, answer the following questions:

- How will end users be impacted by the change being proposed?
- Will the change affect the availability of a resource, even briefly?
- How is the HA software monitoring the resource availability?
- Will the change impact other resources in the HA environment?
- What is the risk of a misstep that could lead to an HA service outage?
- How can the effectiveness of the change be verified?
- What is the change roll-back plan?

Hardware Maintenance

Hardware changes are generally disruptive to the HA environment and always require careful planning. You should consider whether or not the hardware change will also require a software change. In many cases, you must entirely shut down the HA cluster. See "Maintenance with a Full Cluster Outage" on page 242.

System Software Updates

System software updates (such as an operating system upgrade, kernel update, or software patches) are generally disruptive to the HA environment and always require careful planning. In many cases, a full cluster outage is required; see "Maintenance with a Full Cluster Outage" on page 242.

In other cases, an upgrade with the operational HA cluster may be possible; see "Performing a Rolling Upgrade" on page 227.

ISSP Software Updates

Before updating ISSP software, read the release notes and any late-breaking caveats on the Supportfolio download page:

<https://support.sgi.com/login>

Changes Permitted on a Running Resource

If a resource allows the change without impact to production operation, then the change is generally safe to perform in an HA environment. For example, you can make changes to most DMF configuration parameters or add volumes to an existing OpenVault cartridge group without problems. For more information about which parameters can be changed while DMF is running, see the "Best Practices" chapter of the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.



Caution: Changing meta attributes or operation parameters will influence the behavior of the resource or clone and can therefore influence how the HA software handles the resource or clone. If you make a mistake (such as setting a timeout to 3s when you meant to change it to 30s), problems can result.

Changes that Require Maintenance Mode

If a change requires that an individual resource be stopped but does not otherwise impact the rest of the HA cluster, you should put the cluster into maintenance mode before stopping the resource. See "Putting the Cluster into Maintenance Mode" on page 221.

Changes in this category include:

- Any change that requires DMF to be stopped according to the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*
- Restarting the OpenVault server when volume usage is inactive

Note: In general, you should not simply unmanage a given resource because that can adversely impact failcounts and cause inappropriate failovers.

Changes that Require a Full Cluster Outage

Many changes that require a resource to be stopped may also be disruptive to the HA cluster and therefore require a full cluster outage. See "Maintenance with a Full Cluster Outage" on page 242.

Changes in this category include:

- Changes to CXFS filesystem mount options
- Changes to NFS export options
- Changes that require extensive testing

General Requirements

This chapter discusses the following requirements for an HA cluster using SGI resource agents:

- "HA Support Requirements" on page 33
- "Licensing Requirements" on page 33
- "Software Version Requirements" on page 34
- "Hardware Requirements" on page 34
- "System Reset Requirements" on page 34
- "Time Synchronization Requirements" on page 34

Note: Resource-specific requirements are documented in the resource-specific chapters later in this guide.

HA Support Requirements

An HA environment may in some cases require the purchase of additional support from Red Hat or SUSE.

Licensing Requirements

All nodes in an HA cluster must have the appropriate software licenses installed. The following software requires licenses if used:

- CXFS
- DMF
- DMF Parallel Data-Mover Option

For information about obtaining licenses, see the individual product administration guides.

Software Version Requirements

For any of the SGI resource agents, you must use the corresponding version of SGI software as defined in the *SGI InfiniteStorage Software Platform* release note.

Hardware Requirements

All nodes in an SGI HA cluster must be x86_64 architecture with a BMC supporting the IPMI protocol and administrative privileges.

Note: If you form an HA cluster using only members of a partitioned system with a single power supply, a failure of that power supply may result in failure of the HA cluster. CXFS does not support these members as nodes in the CXFS cluster.

DMF supports only one instance running on a given node in an HA cluster at any given time, thus an active/active cluster is not possible. If the cluster also runs CXFS, the DMF server nodes in the cluster must also be CXFS server-capable administration nodes. For additional requirements when using the DMF Parallel Data-Mover Option, see *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.

System Reset Requirements

You must use STONITH node-level fencing to protect data integrity in case of failure. The resource agent differs by operating system. See:

- RHEL: "fence_ipmilan STONITH Template Reference" on page 143
- SLES: "ipmi Template Reference" on page 159

STONITH requires the use of a BMC user account with administrative privileges (typically `-U admin -P admin`). For more information, see the `ipmitool(1)` man page and the user guide or quick-start guide for your system.

Time Synchronization Requirements

You must configure time synchronization among all cluster nodes.

Create the Base HA Cluster

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Install the HA Software" on page 35
- "Enable Multicasting on the Ethernet Switch" on page 36
- "Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment" on page 36
- "Test the Base HA Cluster" on page 42
- "Create the ISSP HA Service" on page 43

Install the HA Software

Note: The ISSP release note provided in the `noarch/sgi-isspdocs` RPM is installed in the following location:

```
/usr/share/doc/packages/sgi-issp-ISSPVERSION/TITLE
```

Install the HA software on `node1` and `node2`, if not already done:

- RHEL:
 1. Install the following:

```
rhel# yum groupinstall "High Availability"
rhel# yum install pacemaker
rhel# yum groupinstall "SGI ISSP High Availability"
```
 2. Create a RHEL update repository according to the directions in the ISSP release note.
- SLES:
 1. Install the SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension by following the instructions in the SUSE *High Availability Guide* section about installation as an add-on (section 3.3):

https://www.suse.com/documentation/sle_ha/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_installation_add-on.html

Note: You will only use the instructions to install the High Availability Extension add-on; further configuration will be done using the instructions in this ISSP guide.

2. Install the ISSP HA pattern:

```
sles# zypper install --type pattern SGI-ISSP-High-Availability
```

3. Create a SLES update repository according to the directions in the ISSP release note.

Enable Multicasting on the Ethernet Switch

Ensure that the Ethernet switch supports multicasting and has it enabled. (Some switches disable multicasting by default.)

Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment

This section discusses the following:

- "RHEL: Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment" on page 36
- "SLES: Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment" on page 40

RHEL: Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment

For RHEL, do the following:

1. Do the following on node1:
 - a. Create the cluster:

```
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --createcluster mycluster
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addnode node1
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addnode node2
```

- b. Set the cluster heartbeat timeout:

```
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --settotem token=120000
```


See "Set the Core Membership Timeout Value Appropriately" on page 28.

- c. Add an alternate HA heartbeat network if appropriate:

```
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addalt node1 node1-priv
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addalt node2 node2-priv
```

- d. Set the debug logging level:

```
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --setlogging debug="on"
```

- e. Specify how cluster manager (CMAN) should send its fencing requests to Pacemaker:

```
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addfencedev pcmk agent=fence_pcmk
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addmethod pcmk-redirect node1
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addmethod pcmk-redirect node2
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addfenceinst pcmk node1 pcmk-redirect port=node1
node1# ccs -f /etc/cluster/cluster.conf --addfenceinst pcmk node2 pcmk-redirect port=node2
```

Note: Do this regardless of whether or not fencing is enabled within Pacemaker.

2. Copy `/etc/cluster/cluster.conf` to node2.
3. On both nodes, disable the default startup behavior that requires quorum:

Note: CMAN assumes the cluster should not start until the node has quorum.

- a. On node1:

```
node1# echo "CMAN_QUORUM_TIMEOUT=0" >> /etc/sysconfig/cman
```

- b. On node2:

```
node2# echo "CMAN_QUORUM_TIMEOUT=0" >> /etc/sysconfig/cman
```

4. Ensure that the `acpid` and `NetworkManager` services are stopped on both nodes:

- a. On node1:

```
node1# chkconfig acpid off
node1# chkconfig NetworkManager off
```

4: Create the Base HA Cluster

```
node1# service acpid stop
node1# service NetworkManager stop
```

- b. On node2:

```
node2# chkconfig acpid off
node2# chkconfig NetworkManager off
```

```
node2# service acpid stop
node2# service NetworkManager stop
```

5. On both nodes, verify that the user `hacluster` and group `haclient` have been added to the node. For example:

- a. On node1:

```
node1# grep hacluster /etc/passwd
hacluster:x:189:189:cluster user:/home/hacluster:/sbin/nologin
node1# grep haclient /etc/group
haclient:x:189:
```

If you must add the user and group to node1, use the `groupadd(8)` and `useradd(8)` commands. For example, using the ID number 189 that is normally assigned by default during installation:

```
node1# groupadd -r haclient -g 189
node1# useradd -r -g haclient -u 189 -s /sbin/nologin -c "cluster user" hacluster
```

Note: If ID 189 is already in use at your site for a different group/user, you must specify a different value that is not in use.

- b. On node2:

```
node2# grep hacluster /etc/passwd
hacluster:x:189:189:cluster user:/home/hacluster:/sbin/nologin
node2# grep haclient /etc/group
haclient:x:189:
```

If you must add the user and group to node2, use the `groupadd` and `useradd` commands as above. For example:

```
node2# groupadd -r haclient -g 189
node2# useradd -r -g haclient -u 189 -s /sbin/nologin -c "cluster user" hacluster
```

6. On both nodes, start the cman and pacemaker services:

a. On node1:

```
node1# chkconfig cman on
node1# chkconfig pacemaker on

node1# service cman start
node1# service pacemaker start
```

b. On node2:

```
node2# chkconfig cman on
node2# chkconfig pacemaker on

node2# service cman start
node2# service pacemaker start
```

For more information, see:

<http://clusterlabs.org/quickstart-redhat.html>

SLES: Configure the Nodes for an HA Environment

Note: This procedure uses explicit node IDs, but you can choose to automatically generate node IDs if you prefer.

You must follow the detailed instructions in the SUSE *High Availability Guide* section about manual cluster setup using YaST in order to initialize the cluster and configure `node1` (section 3.5):

https://www.suse.com/documentation/sle_ha/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_installation_setup_manual.html

Using the above instructions, do the following for `node1`:

1. Set **Bind Network Address** to the network that will support the cluster heartbeat (for example, the CXFS private network, such as `128.162.244.0`), which is different from the IP address to be failed over.
2. Set **Multicast Address** to a multicast address (for example, `226.94.1.1`).
3. Set **Multicast Port** to a multicast port (for example, `5405`).

Ensure that multiple HA clusters on the same local network use different multicast addresses or different multicast port numbers.

4. Explicitly set the HA node ID, such as `1` for `node1`. Each node must have a unique HA node ID. (The HA node ID may be different from the CXFS node ID.)



Caution: With explicit node IDs, you must not use `csync2` on `node2` (despite the directions in the SUSE *High Availability Guide*) because it will result in duplicate node IDs.

5. Set security on.
6. Select **Generate Auth Key File**. It will be created in `/etc/corosync/authkey`; this process can take several minutes to complete.
7. Exit the GUI.

Note: You will not complete all of the steps in the wizard. The following steps take the place of the remainder of the GUI.

8. Modify the HA authorization and configuration files:

- a. Set the following core membership timeout parameters in the `/etc/corosync/corosync.conf` file:

```
totem token
totem consensus
```

The default `consensus` value is 1.2 times the `token` value, which is appropriate for most sites. You should either remove the `consensus` parameter (in order to use the default) or else set it to a value that is greater than 1.2 times the `token` value. See "Set the Core Membership Timeout Value Appropriately" on page 28.

For more information, see the `corosync.conf(5)` man page.

- b. Turn on debug messages in the logging stanza of the `/etc/corosync/corosync.conf` file for all subsystems other than the `totem`:

```
logging{
...
    debug: on
...
    logger_subsys {
        subsys: TOTEM
        debug:  off
    }
}
```

- c. On `node1`, change the permission on the `authkey` and `corosync.conf` files to allow read and write permission for the root user only:

```
node1# chmod 0600 /etc/corosync/authkey /etc/corosync/corosync.conf
```

- d. Copy the `authkey` and `corosync.conf` files from `node1` to `node2` and preserve their 0600 permission. For example:

```
node1# scp -p /etc/corosync/authkey node2:/etc/corosync/authkey
node1# scp -p /etc/corosync/corosync.conf node2:/etc/corosync/corosync.conf
```

- e. Set the `nodeid` in the `corosync.conf` file on `node2` to a unique value. For example:

```
nodeid: 2
```

- f. On both nodes, enable the `logd` and the `openais` services to be started automatically at boot time and then start them immediately:

- On node1:

```
node1# chkconfig logd on
node1# chkconfig openais on

node1# service logd start
node1# service openais start
```

- On node2:

```
node2# chkconfig logd on
node2# chkconfig openais on

node2# service logd start
node2# service openais start
```

Test the Base HA Cluster

Do the following to test the base HA cluster:

1. Examine the cluster status by running the following command on `node1`, waiting to see both nodes come online (which could take a few minutes):

```
node1# crm status
```

The output should show that the cluster consists of two nodes (in this case, `node1` and `node2`), and that there are no resources. For example (truncated):

```
node1# crm status
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
0 Resources configured.
```

```
Online: [ node1 node2 ]
```

2. Disable system reset (which is enabled by default) for testing purposes:

```
node1# crm configure property stonith-enabled=false
```

Note: You will reenable system reset after testing all of the SGI resource primitives.

3. Set the correct two-node quorum policy action:

```
node1# crm configure property no-quorum-policy=ignore
```

Create the ISSP HA Service

After you have created and tested the base HA cluster, configure just one of the following ISSP HA services:

- Chapter 5, "Create the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45
- Chapter 6, "Create the DMF HA Service" on page 61
- Chapter 7, "Create the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service" on page 67

After the HA service is created, you will follow the steps in Chapter 8, "Create the Fencing Capability" on page 77.

Note: If you are implementing multiple HA services, you should complete the entire process for one HA service before adding another service.

Create the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service

This chapter provides an overview of the following:

- "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45
- "Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 47
- "Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational" on page 47
- "Stop Services Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 47
- "Ensure that the NFS Lock Services are Started (*RHEL only*)" on page 49
- "Copy the `/etc/exports` Entries" on page 49
- "Create the Clone" on page 49
- "Test the Clone" on page 50
- "Create the IP Address Alias Group Resources" on page 53
- "Test Each IP Address Alias Group" on page 55
- "Confirm the Completed Status" on page 58
- "Put the HA Service into Production Mode" on page 59

Note: Details about the resources are provided in individual resource chapters.

Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service

Figure 5-1 on page 46 shows a map of an example configuration process for CXFS NFS edge-serving in an active/active HA cluster, using the suggested default IDs found in the templates in `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates`. This map also describes the start/stop order for resources.

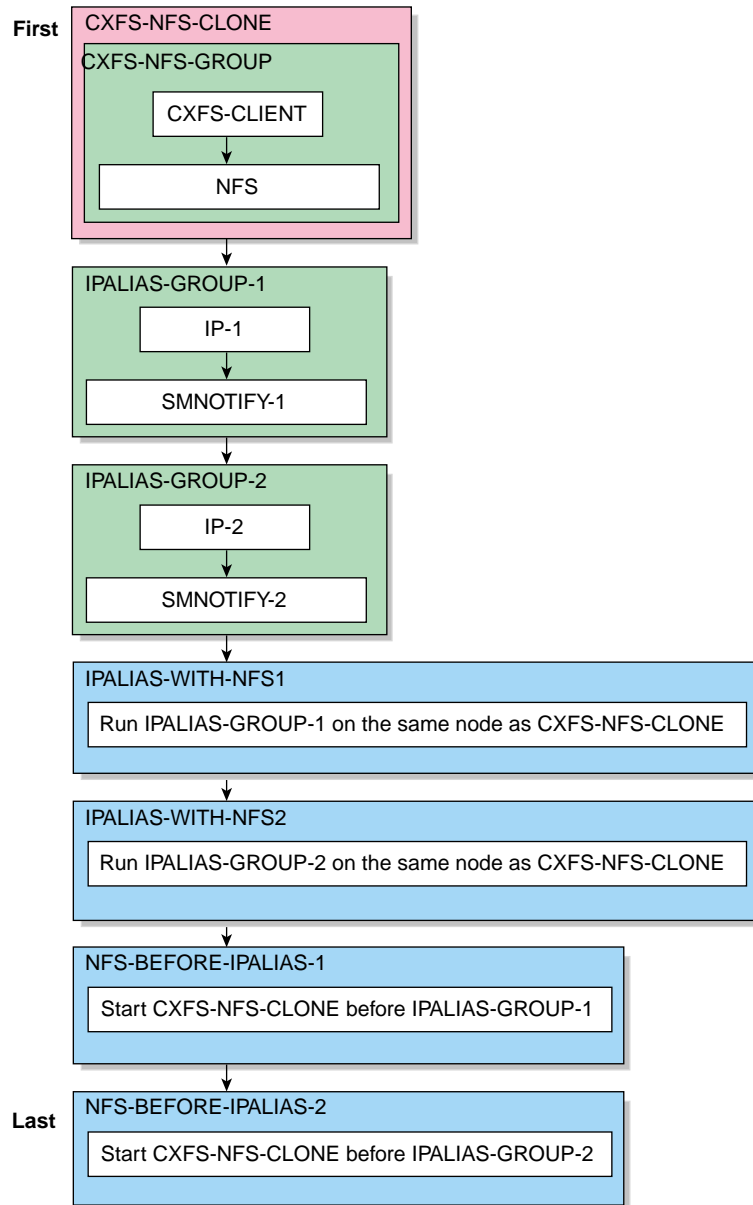


Figure 5-1 Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service

Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment

Test the service components before applying an HA environment, as described in the following:

- "Test the CXFS Client Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 99
- "Test the NFS Service for DMF Use Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 175

Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational

Ensure that the base HA cluster is operational, as described in "Test the Base HA Cluster" on page 42.

Stop Services Before Applying an HA Environment

Do the following on both nodes to ensure that the services will be controlled by the CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service:

Note: Do not disable the `cxfs` and `cxfs_cluster` services.

- RHEL node1:

```
node1# chkconfig cxfs_client off
node1# chkconfig nfs off
node1# chkconfig nmb off
node1# chkconfig smb off
```

```
node1# service cxfs_client stop
node1# service nfs stop
node1# service nmb stop
node1# service smb stop
```

RHEL node2:

```
node2# chkconfig cxfs_client off
node2# chkconfig nfs off
node2# chkconfig nmb off
node2# chkconfig smb off
```

5: Create the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service

```
node2# service cxfs_client stop
node2# service nfs stop
node2# service nmb stop
node2# service smb stop
```

- SLES node1:

```
node1# chkconfig cxfs_client off
node1# chkconfig nfsserver off
node1# chkconfig nmb off
node1# chkconfig smb off
```

```
node1# service cxfs_client stop
node1# service nfsserver stop
node1# service nmb stop
node1# service smb stop
```

SLES node2:

```
node2# chkconfig cxfs_client off
node2# chkconfig nfsserver off
node2# chkconfig nmb off
node2# chkconfig smb off
```

```
node2# service cxfs_client stop
node2# service nfsserver stop
node2# service nmb stop
node2# service smb stop
```

Ensure that the NFS Lock Services are Started (*RHEL only*)

On both RHEL nodes, ensure that NFS lock services are started at boot time:

```
rhel# chkconfig nfslock on
```

Copy the `/etc/exports` Entries

Copy the `/etc/exports` entries that you would like to make highly available from `node1` to the `/etc/exports` file on `node2`.

Note: Be sure to include the `fsid=uniquenumber` export option in order to prevent stale file handles after failover. All matching exports should have the same `fsid=uniquenumber` value on all CXFS NFS edge-serving nodes.

Create the Clone

Use the templates in `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates` as building blocks.

The instructions in this chapter assume that you use the instance names provided in the templates (such as `IP-1` instance name for the `IPAddr2` resource type), except as noted; see "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45 and "Conventions for Resource Instance IDs" on page 19.

Do the following:

1. Copy the contents of the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-nfs-clone` template into a new partial configuration file (referred to as *workfile*). See the comments in the template or "cxfs-nfs-clone Template Reference" on page 117.
2. Copy the primitive text from the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the comments in the template or in "cxfs-client Template Reference" on page 100.
3. Copy the primitive text from the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client-nfsserver` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "cxfs-client-nfsserver Template Reference" on page 110.

4. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
5. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
6. Save *workfile*.
7. Update the database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

Note: As a best practice, you should also run the following command to verify changes you make to the CIB:

```
node1# crm_verify -LV
```

For simplicity, this step is not included in the following procedures but is recommended. For more information, see "Use the `crm_verify` Command to Verify Configuration" on page 24.

Test the Clone

Do the following to test the clone:

1. Start the `clone`. For example:

```
node1# crm resource start CXFS-NFS-CLONE
```

2. Confirm that the `clone` has started. For example:

- a. View the status of the cluster on `node1`. For example (truncated):

```
node1# crm status  
...  
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes  
4 Resources configured.  
  
Online: [ node1 node2 ]  
  
Clone Set: CXFS-NFS-CLONE [CXFS-NFS-GROUP]  
Started: [ node1 node2 ]
```

- b. Verify that the `cxfs_client` process is running on node1:

```
node1# ps -ef | grep cxfs_client
root 11575      1  0 10:32 ?          00:00:00 /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_client -p /var/run/cxfs_client.pid -i TEST
root 12237    7593  0 10:34 pts/1    00:00:00 grep --color -d skip cxfs_client
```

Also execute the command on node2.

- c. View the status of the NFS daemons on node1.

- RHEL:

- NFS v3 and NFS v4 (output truncated):

```
node1# service nfs status
rpc.svcgssd is stopped
rpc.mountd (pid 666 665 663 ... 649 647) is running...
nfsd (pid 800 799 798 ... 672 671) is running...
rpc.rquotad (pid 642) is running...
```

Note: The pid numbers vary with each restart. For NFS v4, the `idmapd` services is also started (but is not reported in the output).

- SLES:

- NFS v3:

```
node1# service nfsserver status
Checking for kernel based NFS server: mountd running
  statd running
  nfsd running
```

- NFS v4:

```
node1# service nfsserver status
Checking for kernel based NFS server: idmapd running
mountd running
statd running
nfsd running
```

Note: Although the `mountd` and `statd` daemons only apply to SLES NFS v3, they are started on SLES NFS v4 as well.

Also execute the command on node2.

3. Set node2 to standby state to ensure that the resources remain on node1:

```
node1# crm node standby node2
```

4. Confirm that node2 is offline and that the resources are off:

- a. View the status of the cluster on node1, which should show that node2 is in standby state:

```
node1# crm status
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
4 Resources configured.

Node node2: standby
Online: [ node1 ]

Clone Set: CXFS-NFS-CLONE [CXFS-NFS-GROUP]
  Started: [ node1 ]
  Stopped: [ CXFS-NFS-GROUP:1 ]
```

- b. Verify that the `cxfs_client` process is not running on node2 by executing the `ps(1)` command on node2 (there should be no output):

```
node2# ps -ef | grep cxfs_client
node2#
```

- c. (*SLES only*) View the status of the NFS daemons on node2, which should show for SLES that `statd` is dead and `nfsd` is unused:

- SLES NFS v3:

```
node2# service nfsserver status
Checking for kernel based NFS server: mountd      unused
      statd                                       dead
      nfsd                                       unused
```

- SLES NFS v4:

```
node2# service nfsserver status
Checking for kernel based NFS server: idmapd      running
      mountd                                     unused
      statd                                       dead
      nfsd                                       unused
```

Note: Although the `mountd` and `statd` daemons only apply only to SLES NFS v3, they are started on SLES NFS v4 as well.

5. Return `node2` to online status:

```
node1# crm node online node2
```

6. Confirm that the `clone` has returned to normal status, as described in step 2.

Create the IP Address Alias Group Resources

Do the following:

1. Create a group resource in another *workfile* for the first set of `IPAddr2` and `cxfs-client-smnotify` resources:

```
group IPALIAS-GROUP-1 IP-1 SMNOTIFY-1 \
      meta target-role="Stopped"
```

```
colocation IPALIAS-WITH-NFS-1 inf: IPALIAS-GROUP-1 CXFS-NFS-CLONE
order NFS-BEFORE-IPALIAS-1 inf: CXFS-NFS-CLONE IPALIAS-GROUP-1
```

For more information, see "ipalias-group Template" on page 157.

2. Copy the primitive text from the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/IPAddr2` template into *workfile* and

replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "IPAddr2 Template" on page 154. Use a unique primitive ID, such as IP-1.

3. Copy the primitive text from the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client-smnotify` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "cxfs-client-smnotify Template Reference" on page 113. Use a unique primitive ID, such as SMNOTIFY-1.
4. Save *workfile*.
5. Update the database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

6. Create a second group resource in another *workfile* for the second set of IPAddr2 and cxfs-client-smnotify resources:

```
group IPALIAS-GROUP-2 IP-2 SMNOTIFY-2 \  
    meta target-role="Stopped"
```

```
colocation IPALIAS-WITH-NFS-2 inf: IPALIAS-GROUP-2 CXFS-NFS-CLONE  
order NFS-BEFORE-IPALIAS-2 inf: CXFS-NFS-CLONE IPALIAS-GROUP-2
```

7. Copy the primitive text from the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/IPAddr2` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments in "IPAddr2 Template" on page 154. Use a unique primitive ID, such as IP-2.
8. Copy the primitive text from the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client-smnotify` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in template comments or in "cxfs-client-smnotify Template Reference" on page 113. Use a unique primitive ID, such as SMNOTIFY-2.
9. Verify that the timeout values are appropriate for your site.
10. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
11. Save *workfile*.
12. Update the database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

Test Each IP Address Alias Group

To test each IP address alias group, do the following:

1. Start the group. For example, to start IPALIAS-GROUP-1:

```
node1# crm resource start IPALIAS-GROUP-1
```

2. Test the IP address alias resource within the group:

- a. Verify that the IP address is configured correctly on node1:

```
node1# ip -o addr show | grep 128.162.244.240
4: eth2    inet 128.162.244.240/24 brd 128.162.244.255 scope global secondary eth2
```

- b. Verify that node2 does not accept the IP address packets. For example, run the following command on node2 (the output should be 0):

```
node2# ip -o addr show | grep -c 128.162.244.240
0
```

- c. Connect to the virtual address using ssh or telnet and verify that the IP address is being served by the correct system. For example, for the IP address 128.162.244.240 and the machine named node1:

```
nfscclient# ssh root@128.162.244.240
Last login: Mon Jul 14 10:34:58 2008 from mynode.mycompany.com
node1# uname -n
node1
```

- d. Move the resource group containing the IPaddr2 resource from node1 to node2:

```
node1# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-1 node2
```

- e. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
8 Resources configured.

Online: [ node1 node2 ]

Clone Set: CXFS-NFS-CLONE [CXFS-NFS-GROUP]
Started: [ node1 node2 ]
```

5: Create the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service

```
Resource Group: IPALIAS-GROUP-1
  IP-1      (ocf::heartbeat:IPaddr2):      Started node2
  SMNOTIFY-1 (ocf::sgi:cxfs-client-smnotify): Started node2
```

- f. Verify that the IP address is configured correctly on node2:

```
node2# ip -o addr show | grep 128.162.244.240
4: eth2    inet 128.162.244.240/24 brd 128.162.244.255 scope global secondary eth2
```

- g. Verify that node1 does not accept the IP address packets by running the following command on node1 (the output should be 0):

```
node1# ip -o addr show | grep -c 128.162.244.240
0
```

- h. Connect to the virtual address using ssh or telnet and verify that the IP address is being served by the correct system. For example, for the IP address 128.162.244.240 and the machine named node2:

```
nfsclient# ssh root@128.162.244.240
Last login: Mon Jul 14 10:34:58 2008 from mynode.mycompany.com
```

```
node2# uname -n
node2
```

- i. Move the resource group containing the IPaddr2 resource back to node1:

```
node1# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-1 node1
```

- j. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
8 Resources configured.

Online: [ node1 node2 ]

Clone Set: CXFS-NFS-CLONE [CXFS-NFS-GROUP]
  Started: [ node1 node2 ]
Resource Group: IPALIAS-GROUP-1
  IP-1      (ocf::heartbeat:IPaddr2):      Started node1
  SMNOTIFY-1 (ocf::sgi:cxfs-client-smnotify): Started node1
```

- k. Test again as in steps a–c above.
- l. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove IPALIAS-GROUP-1
```

- 3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the other group, such as IPALIAS-GROUP-2.
- 4. Test the NSM notification resource within the group. For example, on a Linux NFS client:

- a. On a system that is outside the HA cluster (for example, a system named `nfsclient`), mount the filesystem via the IP address alias `hostname` values specified in the `cxf-client-smnotify` resources (such as `hostalias1` and `hostalias2`, which are not the physical hostnames). For example:

```
nfsclient# mount hostalias1://mnt/nfsexportedfilesystem /hostalias1
nfsclient# mount hostalias2://mnt/nfsexportedfilesystem /hostalias2
```

For more information, see "cxf-client-smnotify Template Reference" on page 113

- b. Turn on Network Lock Manager debugging on the NFS client:

```
nfsclient# echo 65534 > /proc/sys/sunrpc/nlm_debug
```

- c. Acquire locks:

```
nfsclient# touch /hostalias1/file
nfsclient# flock -x /hostalias1/file -c "sleep 1000000" &
nfsclient# touch /hostalias2/file2
nfsclient# flock -x /hostalias2/file2 -c "sleep 1000000" &
```

- d. (*NFSv3 only*) Check in the shared `sm-notify` `statedir` directory on the NFS server for resources `node1` and `node2` to ensure that a file has been created by `statd`. The name should be the hostname of the node on which you have taken the locks.

If the file is not present, it indicates a misconfiguration of name resolution. Ensure that fully qualified domain name entries for each NFS client are present in `/etc/hosts` on each NFS server. (If the `/etc/hosts` file is not present, NSM reboot notification will not be sent to the client and locks will not be reclaimed.)

- e. On the NFS clients, ensure that the appropriate NFS file contains the fully qualified domain name of each server from which you have requested locks. (If this file is not present, NSM reboot notification will be rejected by the client. The client must mount the node that uses the IP address specified by the `ipalias` value, such as `node1`, by hostname and not by the IP address in order for this to work.) The file location varies by OS:

- RHEL: `/var/lib/nfs/statd/sm`
- SLES: `/var/lib/nfs/sm`

- f. Put `node1` into standby state:

```
node1# crm node standby node1
```

- g. Verify that both of the IP address aliases are now on `node2`:

```
node2# ip addr
```

- h. (*NFS v3 only*) Verify that the log files (see "Examine Log Files" on page 24) on the NFS client (`nfscclient`) contain a message about reclaiming locks for the hostname for every `ipalias` value on which you have taken locks via NFS. (The two `statd` processes for the HA cluster share the same state directory, specified by the `statedir` parameter. NSM reboot notification will be sent to clients for all IP address aliases in the cluster, so you will see messages for all IP address aliases that have been mounted by the client.) For example:

```
Jul 30 13:40:46 nfscclient kernel: NLM: done reclaiming locks for host node2
```

```
Jul 30 13:40:49 nfscclient kernel: NLM: done reclaiming locks for host node1
```

- i. Make `node1` active again:

```
node1# crm node online node1
```

- 5. Test the other group.

Confirm the Completed Status

Use the `status` command to confirm the resulting HA cluster:

```
node1# crm status  
...  
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes  
10 Resources configured.
```

```
Online: [ node1 node2 ]

Clone Set: CXFS-NFS-CLONE [CXFS-NFS-GROUP]
  Started: [ node1 node2 ]
Resource Group: IPALIAS-GROUP-1
  IP-1      (ocf::heartbeat:IPaddr2):      Started node1
  SMNOTIFY-1 (ocf::sgi:cxfs-client-smnotify): Started node1
Resource Group: IPALIAS-GROUP-2
  IP-2      (ocf::heartbeat:IPaddr2):      Started node2
  SMNOTIFY-2 (ocf::sgi:cxfs-client-smnotify): Started node2
STONITH-NODE1 (stonith:external/ipmi):      Started node2
STONITH-NODE2 (stonith:external/ipmi):      Started node1
```

Note: It does not matter whether IPALIAS-GROUP-1 runs on node1 or node2. The important thing is that during normal operation (before failover), IPALIAS-GROUP-1 and IPALIAS-GROUP-2 run on different nodes

Put the HA Service into Production Mode

See Chapter 8, "Create the Fencing Capability" on page 77 to complete the process.

Create the DMF HA Service

This chapter provides an overview of the following:

- "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61
- "Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 64
- "Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational" on page 64
- "Stop Services Related to DMF Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 64
- "Add the Resources in the Correct Order" on page 66
- "Confirm the Completed Status" on page 66
- "Put the DMF HA Service into Production Mode" on page 66

Note: Details about the resources are provided in individual resource chapters.

Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service

Figure 6-1 shows a DMF HA implementation in a two-node active/passive HA cluster (`node1` and `node2`), using the suggested default IDs found in the templates in `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates`. This map also describes the start/stop order for resources. Table 6-1 lists the resource-specific reference chapter that provide the details.

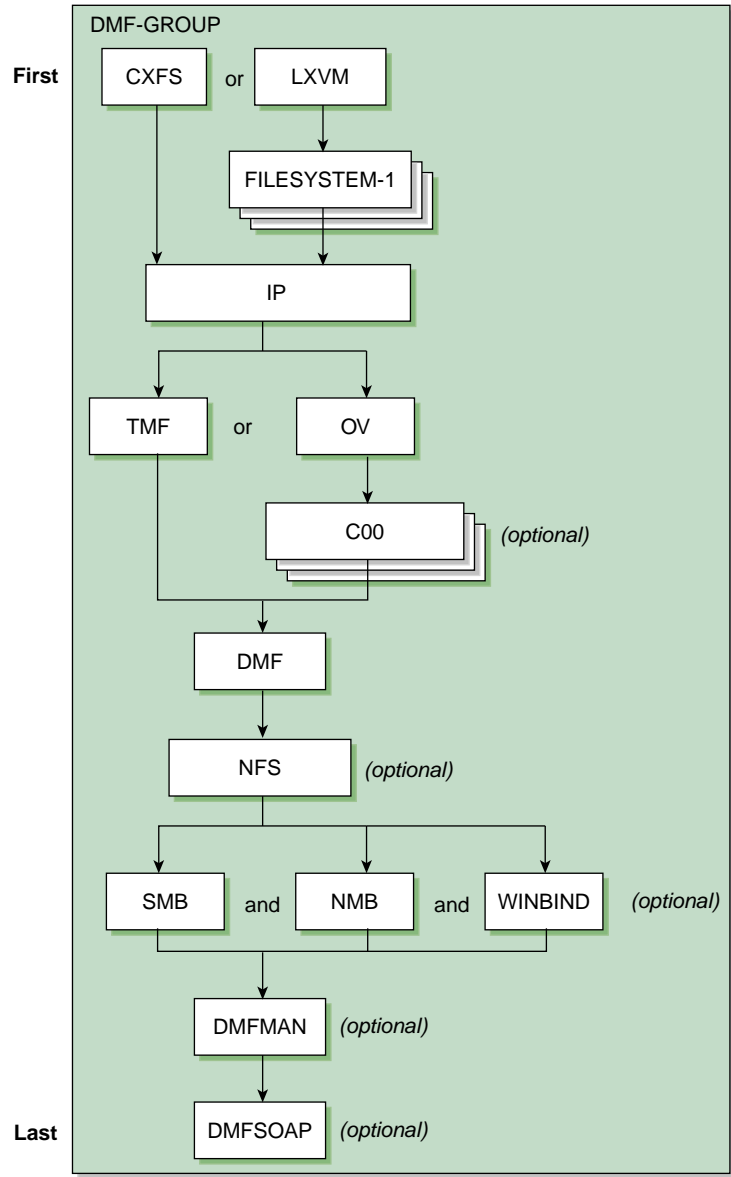


Figure 6-1 Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service

Table 6-1 Order of Resources Used in the DMF HA Service

Order	Purpose	Example ID	Reference Chapter	
First	Group name	DMF-GROUP	Chapter 16, "DMF-GROUP Resource" on page 119	
	Filesystem	CXFS	Chapter 10, "cxfs Resource" on page 93	
		— <i>or</i> —		
		LXVM	Chapter 26, "lxvm Resource" on page 167	
		<i>plus</i>		
		FILESYSTEM- <i>n</i> (<i>one or more</i>)	Chapter 21, "Filesystem Resource" on page 145	
	IP alias	IPAddr2	Chapter 22, "IPAddr2 Resource" on page 151	
	Mounting service	TMF	Chapter 31, "tmf Resource" on page 207	
		— <i>or</i> —		
			OV	Chapter 29, "openvault Resource" on page 183
			<i>plus</i>	
			C0 <i>n</i> (<i>one or more</i>)	Chapter 9, "copan_ov_client Resource" on page 81
	DMF	DMF	Chapter 17, "dmf Resource" on page 123	
NFS (<i>optional</i>)	NFS	Chapter 28, "nfsserver Resource" on page 175		
Samba (<i>optional</i>)	SMB	Chapter 30, "nmb and smb Resource" on page 199		
	NMB			
Winbind (<i>optional</i>)	WINBIND	Chapter 32, "winbind Resource" on page 217		
DMF Manager (<i>optional</i>)	DMFMAN	Chapter 18, "dmfman Resource" on page 133		
Last	DMF SOAP (<i>optional</i>)	DMFSOAP	Chapter 19, "dmfsoap Resource" on page 139	

Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment

Test the service components before applying an HA environment, as described in the following:

- Filesystem, one of the following:
 - "Test CXFS Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 95
 - "Test Local XVM Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 167
- Mounting service, one of the following:
 - "Test the TMF Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 207
 - "Test OpenVault Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 184, and *(optional)* "Test the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 83
- "Test DMF Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 125
- "Test the NFS Service for DMF Use Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 175 *(Optional)*
- "Test Samba Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 199 *(Optional)*
- "Test DMF Manager Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 133 *(Optional)*
- "Test the DMF Client SOAP Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 139 *(Optional)*

Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational

Ensure that the base HA cluster is operational, as described in "Test the Base HA Cluster" on page 42.

Stop Services Related to DMF Before Applying an HA Environment

Do the following on both nodes to ensure that the non-HA services will be controlled by the DMF HA service:

- RHEL node1:

```
node1# chkconfig dmfs off
node1# chkconfig dmfsman off
node1# chkconfig dmfssoap off
node1# chkconfig nfs off
node1# chkconfig openvault off
```

```
node1# service dmfs stop
node1# service dmfsman stop
node1# service dmfssoap stop
node1# service nfs stop
node1# service openvault stop
```

RHEL node2:

```
node2# chkconfig dmfs off
node2# chkconfig dmfsman off
node2# chkconfig dmfssoap off
node2# chkconfig nfs off
node2# chkconfig openvault off
```

```
node2# service dmfs stop
node2# service dmfsman stop
node2# service dmfssoap stop
node2# service nfs stop
node2# service openvault stop
```

- SLES node1:

```
node1# chkconfig dmfs off
node1# chkconfig dmfsman off
node1# chkconfig dmfssoap off
node1# chkconfig nfsserver off
node1# chkconfig openvault off
node1# chkconfig tmf off (optional)
```

```
node1# service dmfs stop
node1# service dmfsman stop
node1# service dmfssoap stop
node1# service nfsserver stop
node1# service openvault stop
```

```
node1# service tmf stop (optional)
```

SLES node2:

```
node2# chkconfig dmf off
node2# chkconfig dmfman off
node2# chkconfig dmfsoap off
node2# chkconfig nfserver off
node2# chkconfig openvault off
node2# chkconfig tmf off (optional)
```

```
node2# service dmf stop
node2# service dmfman stop
node2# service dmfsoap stop
node2# service nfserver stop
node2# service openvault stop
node2# service tmf stop (optional)
```

Add the Resources in the Correct Order

For the DMF HA implementation, you will create a single resource group (DMF-GROUP) that will contain all of the other resources, adding one resource at a time to the group and then testing it. As a starting point, use the templates in `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates` as building blocks. Add the resources in the order shown in Figure 6-1 on page 62, skipping products that do not apply to your site.

Confirm the Completed Status

Use the `status` command to confirm the resulting HA cluster:

```
node1# crm status
```

Put the DMF HA Service into Production Mode

See Chapter 8, "Create the Fencing Capability" on page 77 to complete the process.

Create the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service

This chapter provides an overview of the following:

- "Map of Resources for the COPAN MAID OpenVault HA Service" on page 67
- "Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 68
- "Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational" on page 68
- "Stop the `cxfs_client` and `openvault` Services Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 69
- "Disable the Parallel Data-Mover Nodes and the Services" on page 69
- "Create the OpenVault Components on the Failover Node" on page 70
- "Create and Test the HA Service" on page 72
- "Confirm the Completed Status" on page 75
- "Put the HA Service into Production Mode" on page 75

Map of Resources for the COPAN MAID OpenVault HA Service

Figure 7-1 shows a map of an example configuration process for the OpenVault client service for COPAN MAID shelves in an active/active HA cluster that consists of two parallel data-mover nodes named `mover1` and `mover2`. (`mover1` is the same node as `node1` referred to in Chapter 4, "Create the Base HA Cluster" on page 35.) The map uses the suggested default IDs found in the templates in `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates`.

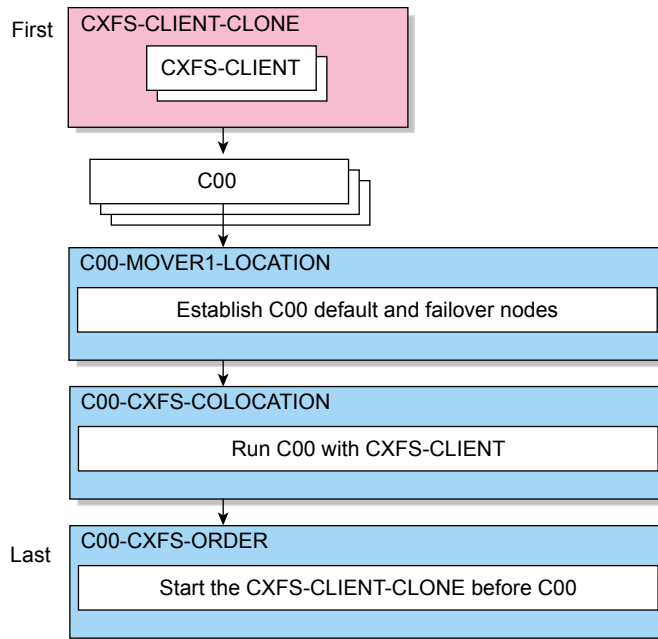


Figure 7-1 Map of Resources for the COPAN MAID OpenVault HA Service

Test the Service Components Before Applying an HA Environment

Test the service components before applying an HA environment, as described in the following:

- "Test the CXFS Client Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 99
- "Test the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 83

Ensure that the Base HA Cluster is Operational

Ensure that the base HA cluster is operational, as described in "Test the Base HA Cluster" on page 42.

Stop the `cxfs_client` and `openvault` Services Before Applying an HA Environment

Do the following on both parallel data-mover nodes to ensure that the non-HA services will be controlled by the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA service:

- On `mover1`:

```
mover1# chkconfig cxfs_client off
mover1# chkconfig openvault off
```

```
mover1# service cxfs_client stop
mover1# service openvault stop
```

- On `mover2`:

```
mover2# chkconfig cxfs_client off
mover2# chkconfig openvault off
```

```
mover2# service cxfs_client stop
mover2# service openvault stop
```

Disable the Parallel Data-Mover Nodes and the Services

Do the following to ensure that there is no activity to the COPAN MAID shelf:

1. On the DMF server, disable both parallel data-mover nodes:

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -d mover1 mover2
```

2. Verify that there are no `dmatwc` or `dmatrc` data-mover processes running on either parallel data-mover node. For example, the output of the following command should be empty on both nodes:

- On `mover1`:

```
mover1# ps -ef | egrep 'dmatrc|dmatwc' | grep -v grep
mover1#
```

- On `mover2`:

```
mover2# ps -ef | egrep 'dmatrc|dmatwc' | grep -v grep
mover2#
```

If the output is not empty, you must wait for the `dmnode_admin -d` action from step 1 to complete (the entire process can take 6 minutes or longer). Rerun the `ps` command until there is no output.

3. On the DMF server, determine which CXFS filesystems are mounted:

```
dmfserver# ls /dev/cxvm
```

Save the output from this command for use later when you define the `VOLUME_LIST` for the `volnames` parameter in the `cxfs-client` resource in "Create and Test the HA Service" on page 72.

Create the OpenVault Components on the Failover Node

When you configured the non-HA services according to the information in *COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide*, you executed an `ov_shelf(8)` command for each COPAN MAID shelf in order to create the required OpenVault components (see "Test the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 83).

In this step, you will create corresponding OpenVault components for the failover node so that it is ready to assume control of OpenVault in case of failover, using the following information for shelf 0 as an example:

- Shelf identifier: `C00` (indicating cabinet 0, shelf 0)
- Default node: `mover1`
- Failover node: `mover2`

Note: For more information about the shelf identifier, see *COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide*.

Do the following:

1. On `mover1`:
 - a. Export the shelf, hostname, and OCF root environment variables for use by the `copan_ov_client` script:

```
mover1# export OCF_RESKEY_shelf_name=C00
mover1# export OCF_RESKEY_give_host=mover2
```

```
mover1# export OCF_ROOT=/usr/lib/ocf
```

- b. Transfer ownership of the shelf from mover1 to mover2:

```
mover1# /usr/lib/ocf/resource.d/sgi/copan_ov_client give
```

2. On mover2:

- a. Verify that mover2 now owns the shelf's XVM volumes (C00A through C00Z, although not necessarily listed in alphabetical order):

```
mover2# xvm -d local probe | grep C00
phys/copan_C00M
phys/copan_C00B
phys/copan_C00G
...
```

- b. Create the OpenVault components for mover2:

```
mover2# ov_shelf create C00
```

Messages such as the following may be seen at this point, but do not indicate an error:

```
Cartridge "C00B00" in the openvault database starts with the string "C00" but its owning library is unknown
Cartridge "C00B01" in the openvault database starts with the string "C00" but its owning library is unknown
Cartridge "C00B02" in the openvault database starts with the string "C00" but its owning library is unknown
```

For more information, see *COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide*.

- c. Stop the newly created LCP and DCPs for the shelf:

```
mover2# ov_stop C00*
```

- d. Export the shelf, hostname, and OCF root environment variables for use by the copan_ov_client script:

```
mover2# export OCF_RESKEY_shelf_name=C00
mover2# export OCF_RESKEY_give_host=mover1
mover2# export OCF_ROOT=/usr/lib/ocf
```

- e. Transfer ownership of the shelf from mover2 back to mover1:

```
mover2# /usr/lib/ocf/resource.d/sgi/copan_ov_client give
```

3. On `mover1`, verify that `mover1` once again owns the shelf's XVM volumes:

```
mover1# xvm -d local probe | grep C00
phys/copan_C00M
phys/copan_C00B
phys/copan_C00G
...
```

4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 for each shelf.

Note: For load-balancing purposes, `mover1` should be the default node for half of the shelves and `mover2` should be the default node for the remaining shelves.

Create and Test the HA Service

As a starting point, use the templates in `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates` as building blocks.

The instructions in this chapter assume that you use the instance names provided in the templates (such as `CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE`), except as noted; see "Map of Resources for the COPAN MAID OpenVault HA Service" on page 67 and "Conventions for Resource Instance IDs" on page 19.

Do the following:

1. Copy the contents of the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client-clone` template into a new file partial configuration file (referred to as *workfile*). See "cxfs-client-clone Template Reference" on page 103.
2. Copy the primitive text from the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "cxfs-client Template Reference" on page 100.
3. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
4. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
5. Save *workfile*.

6. Update the database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

Note: As a best practice, you should also run the following command to verify changes you make to the CIB:

```
node1# crm_verify -LV
```

For simplicity, this step is not included in the following procedures but is recommended. For more information, see "Use the `crm_verify` Command to Verify Configuration" on page 24.

7. Test the clone:

a. Start the clone. For example:

```
mover1# crm resource start CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE
```

It may take several minutes for the filesystems to mount.

b. Confirm that the clone has started. For example:

i. View the status of the cluster on `mover1`. For example (truncated):

```
mover1# crm status
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
2 Resources configured.

Online: [ mover1 mover2 ]

Clone Set: CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE [CXFS_CLIENT]
Started: [ mover1 mover2 ]
```

ii. Verify that the `cxfs_client` process is running on `mover1` and `mover2`. For example:

- On `mover1`:

```
mover1# ps -ef | grep cxfs_client | grep -v grep
root 11575 1 0 10:32 ? 00:00:00 /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_client -p /var/run/cxfs_client.pid -i TEST
```

7: Create the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service

- On mover2:

```
mover2# ps -ef | grep cxfs_client | grep -v grep
root 11576    1  0 10:32 ?        00:00:00 /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_client -p /var/run/cxfs_client.pid -i TEST
```

- c. Set mover2 to standby state to ensure that the resources remain on mover1:

```
mover1# crm node standby mover2
```

- d. Confirm that mover2 is offline and that the resources are off:

- i. View the status of the cluster on mover1, which should show that mover2 is in standby state. For example:

```
mover1# crm status
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
2 Resources configured.

Node mover2: standby
Online: [ mover1 ]

Clone Set: CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE [CXFS_CLIENT]
Started: [ mover1 ]
Stopped: [ cxfs_client:1 ]
```

- ii. Verify that the `cxfs_client` process is not running on mover2. For example, executing the following command on mover2 should provide no output:

```
mover2# ps -ef | grep cxfs_client | grep -v grep
mover2#
```

- e. Return mover2 to online status by executing the following on mover1:

```
mover1# crm node online mover2
```

- f. Confirm that the clone has returned to started status, as described in step 7b.

Note: It may take several minutes for all filesystems to mount successfully.

8. Create another *workfile* file that contains the primitive and location text for the `copan_ov_client` resource, replacing the site-specific variables as directed

in the template comments or in "copan_ov_client Template Reference" on page 89.

9. Save *workfile*.
10. Update the database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```
11. Repeat steps 8–10 for any other shelves to be managed by the HA service.
12. Follow the instructions in Chapter 8, "Create the Fencing Capability" on page 77 to create the STONITH capability.
13. Test the `copan_ov_client` resource by following the instructions in "Manually Moving a `copan_ov_client` Resource" on page 225 to move a resource from its default node to its failover node, and then return it to the default node.

Confirm the Completed Status

Use the `status` command to confirm the resulting HA cluster:

```
node1# crm status
```

Put the HA Service into Production Mode

Given that the fencing capability exists and the resources have been tested, you can now use the HA cluster in production mode.

Create the Fencing Capability

This chapter discusses the following steps to ensure data integrity and put the tested HA cluster into production mode:

- "Create the STONITH Facility" on page 77
- "Enable Node-Level Fencing" on page 78
- "Test the STONITH Facility" on page 79
- "Remove Constraints" on page 79

Create the STONITH Facility

Create the appropriate STONITH facility:

- "RHEL STONITH" on page 77
- "SLES STONITH" on page 78

RHEL STONITH

Do the following to create a STONITH facility for RHEL:

1. Copy the contents of the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/fence-ipmilan` template into a new file partial configuration file (referred to as *workfile*) and replace the site-specific variables as directed in "fence_ipmilan STONITH Template Reference" on page 143.
2. Verify that the `timeout`, `userid`, `passwd`, and `interface` values are appropriate for your site.
3. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
4. Save *workfile*.
5. Update the database:

```
rhel# crm configure load update workfile
```

6. Repeat steps 1 through 5 for the second node, using different `delay` values, such as 0 and 15.
7. To prevent the `acpid` service from inappropriately attempting a graceful shutdown, ensure that the services not currently running and will not restart (on both RHEL nodes):

- On RHEL `node1`:

```
node1# service acpid stop
node1# chkconfig acpid off
```

- On RHEL `node2`:

```
node2# service acpid stop
node2# chkconfig acpid off
```

SLES STONITH

Do the following to create a STONITH facility for SLES:

1. Copy the contents of the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/ipmi` template into a new file partial configuration file (referred to as *workfile*) and replace the site-specific variables as directed in "ipmi Template Reference" on page 159.
2. Verify that the `timeout`, `userid`, `passwd`, and `interface` values are appropriate for your site.
3. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
4. Save *workfile*.
5. Update the database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

6. Repeat steps 1 through 5 for the second node.

Enable Node-Level Fencing

Enable node-level fencing (which was previously disabled for testing purposes):

```
node1# crm configure property stonith-enabled=true
```

Test the STONITH Facility

To test the STONITH facility, use the `node fence` command on one node to fence the other node. For example, to test the failover of resources running on `node1`:

1. From `node2`, reset `node1`:

```
node2# crm node fence node1
```

2. Wait for the failover to occur.

3. On `node2`, execute the following:

```
node2# crm status
```

If all of the resources are not failed over, wait again and repeat the command.

Remove Constraints

Ensure that any constraints remaining in the cluster are appropriate for a production environment. To remove any remaining implicit constraints imposed by an administrative move, enter the following:

```
node1# crm resource unmove resource
```


`copan_ov_client` Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "COPAN MAID Requirements" on page 81
- "Test the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 83
- "Stop the `openvault` Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 84
- "Create the OpenVault Components on the Passive Node" on page 84
- "Configure COPAN MAID OpenVault Client for High Availability" on page 86
- "`copan_ov_client` Template Reference" on page 89

COPAN MAID Requirements

This section discusses the following:

- "COPAN MAID Requirements in Any HA Cluster" on page 81
- "COPAN MAID Requirements in a DMF HA Cluster" on page 82
- "COPAN MAID Requirements in a Mover-Node HA Cluster" on page 82

COPAN MAID Requirements in Any HA Cluster

Using COPAN MAID shelves in any HA cluster requires the following:

- OpenVault must be configured to manage the RAID sets, `lxvm` volumes, and `xfes` filesystems for each shelf
- At any time, only one node (the *owner node*) can manage activity to a given shelf
- Activity to all shelves controlled by a given node must be stopped before moving the control of any one of those shelves to another node

COPAN MAID Requirements in a DMF HA Cluster

In addition to the requirements listed above in "COPAN MAID Requirements in Any HA Cluster", using COPAN MAID shelves in an active/passive DMF HA cluster consisting of potential DMF servers also requires the following:

- All potential DMF server nodes in the HA cluster must have physical connectivity to the shelves
- The active DMF server must be the owner node of all of the shelves
- The OpenVault server resource must be started before the COPAN OpenVault client resource is started
- The COPAN OpenVault client resource must be stopped before the OpenVault server resource is stopped

For suggested resource start/stop order, see Figure 6-1 on page 62.

COPAN MAID Requirements in a Mover-Node HA Cluster

In addition to the requirements listed in "COPAN MAID Requirements in Any HA Cluster" on page 81, using COPAN MAID shelves in an active/active HA cluster consisting of two parallel data-mover nodes also requires the following:

- Both parallel data-mover nodes in the HA cluster must have physical connectivity to the shelves.
- The parallel data-mover nodes that control the shelves cannot also be used for other tape resources.
- The CXFS client resource on each parallel data-mover node must be started (via a clone) before the COPAN OpenVault client resource is started on those nodes.
- The COPAN OpenVault client resource on each parallel data-mover node must be stopped before the CXFS client resource is stopped on those nodes.
- A parallel data-mover node must be configured as the owner node for each shelf. For load-balancing purposes, one mover node will be the default owner of half of the shelves and the other mover node will be the default owner of the remaining shelves.

- On both parallel data-mover nodes during HA operation, disable the `cxfs_client` and `openvault` services from being started automatically at boot time:

```
ha# chkconfig cxfs_client off
ha# chkconfig openvault off
```

The HA software will control these services.

For suggested resource start/stop order, see Figure 7-1 on page 68.

Test the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client Before Applying an HA Environment

Configure the following OpenVault components for each COPAN MAID shelf by executing the `ov_shelf(8)` command on `node1` (or `mover1`), making `node1` the *owner node* for that shelf, according to the instructions in the *COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide*:

- One library control program (LCP)
- Up to 16 drive control programs (DCPs)
- One OpenVault drive group

Note: You will not run `ov_shelf` on `node2` at this point.

If you are using the Parallel Data-Mover Option, also see the instructions in *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.

Note: You will create the OpenVault components on the alternate node later, using the instructions in this guide.

To test the non-HA service, follow the instructions to test that OpenVault can mount a migration volume, as described in the *COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide*.

Stop the openvault Service Before Applying an HA Environment

To use the `copan_ov_client` resource, you must stop the `openvault` service on each node before applying an HA environment:

```
node1# chkconfig openvault off
```

```
node1# service openvault off
```

```
node2# chkconfig openvault off
```

```
node2# service openvault off
```

The HA software will control this service.

Create the OpenVault Components on the Passive Node

When you configured the non-HA services according to the information in *COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide*, you executed an `ov_shelf(8)` command for each shelf in order to create the required OpenVault components (see "Test the COPAN MAID OpenVault Client Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 83).

In this step, you will create corresponding OpenVault components for the passive node so that it is ready to resume control of OpenVault in case of failover, using the following information for shelf 0 as an example:

- Shelf identifier: `C00` (indicating cabinet 0, shelf 0)
- Active node: `node1`
- Passive node: `node2`

Note: For more information about the shelf ID, see *COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide*.

Do the following:

1. On `node1`:
 - a. Stop all of the shelf's OpenVault clients:

```
node1# ov_stop C00*
```


- b. Export the OCF shelf, hostname, and root environment variables for use by the `copan_ov_client` script:

```
node1# export OCF_RESKEY_shelf_name=C00
node1# export OCF_RESKEY_give_host=node2
node1# export OCF_ROOT=/usr/lib/ocf
```

- c. Transfer ownership of the shelf from node1 to node2:

```
node1# /usr/lib/ocf/resource.d/sgi/copan_ov_client give
```

2. On node2:

- a. Verify that node2 now owns the shelf's XVM volumes (C00A through C00Z, although not necessarily listed in alphabetical order):

```
node2# xvm -d local probe | grep C00
phys/copan_C00M
phys/copan_C00B
phys/copan_C00G
...
```

- b. Create the OpenVault components for node2:

```
node2# ov_shelf create C00
```

This automatically starts all of the shelf's OpenVault components.

For more information, see *COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide*.

- c. Stop all of the shelf's OpenVault clients:

```
node2# ov_stop C00*
```

- d. Export the shelf, hostname, and OCF root environment variables for use by the `copan_ov_client` script:

```
node2# export OCF_RESKEY_shelf_name=C00
node2# export OCF_RESKEY_give_host=node1
node2# export OCF_ROOT=/usr/lib/ocf
```

- e. Transfer ownership of the shelf from node2 back to node1:

```
node2# /usr/lib/ocf/resource.d/sgi/copan_ov_client give
```

3. On node1:

- a. Verify that `node1` once again owns the shelf's XVM volumes (C00A through C00Z, although not necessarily listed in alphabetical order):

```
node1# xvm -d local probe | grep C00
phys/copan_C00M
phys/copan_C00B
phys/copan_C00G
...
```

- b. Restart all of the shelf's OpenVault clients:

```
node1# ov_start C00*
```

4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 for each shelf.

Configure COPAN MAID OpenVault Client for High Availability

1. Create another *workfile* that contains the following, where *Cxx* is the COPAN MAID shelf ID:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources Cxx
```

For example, using C00 for cabinet 0 shelf 0:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources C00
```

For more information about the group definition, see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122.

2. Copy the primitive in the `copan_ov_client` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables for the appropriate section, as directed in the template comments or in "copan_ov_client Template Reference" on page 89.

Note: The `copan_ov_client` template contains two sections, one for a COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service and another for a DMF HA service – you must fill in the values in the section for the service that you want to configure and delete the other section entirely.

You should configure an instance of this resource for each shelf that will be owned by the active DMF server. (Shelves that are owned by a parallel data-mover node are not included in the DMF HA service.)

3. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
4. Delete the section of the template that does not apply to your configuration.
5. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
6. Save *workfile*.
7. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

8. Test the new resource. For example, using shelf ID C00:

- a. Verify that shelf C00 becomes available after a few minutes on node1:

```
node1# ov_stat -L C00 -D 'C00.*'
```

Library Name	Broken	Disabled	State	LCP State
C00	false	false	ready	ready

Drive Name	Group	Access	Broken	Disabled	SoftState	HardState	DCP State	Occupied	Cartridge PCL
C00d00	dg_c00	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false	
C00d01	dg_c00	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false	
C00d02	dg_c00	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false	
C00d03	dg_c00	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false	
C00d04	dg_c00	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false	
C00d05	dg_c00	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false	
C00d06	dg_c00	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false	

- b. Move the resource group containing the `copan_ov_client` resource from node1 to node2:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- c. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- d. Verify that shelf C00 becomes available after a few minutes on node2:

```
node2# ov_stat -L C00 -D 'C00.*'
```

Library Name	Broken	Disabled	State	LCP State
C00	false	false	ready	ready

Drive Name	Group	Access	Broken	Disabled	SoftState	HardState	DCP State	Occupied	Cartridge PCL
------------	-------	--------	--------	----------	-----------	-----------	-----------	----------	---------------

```
C00d00      dg_c00      true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready      false
C00d01      dg_c00      true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready      false
C00d02      dg_c00      true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready      false
C00d03      dg_c00      true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready      false
C00d04      dg_c00      true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready      false
C00d05      dg_c00      true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready      false
C00d06      dg_c00      true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready      false
```

- e. Move the resource group containing the copan_ov_client resource back to node1:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- f. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- g. Verify that shelf C00 becomes available after a few minutes on node1:

```
node1# ov_stat -L C00 -D 'C00.*'
```

```
Library Name      Broken  Disabled  State      LCP State
C00               false   false     ready      ready
```

```
Drive Name      Group      Access Broken Disabled SoftState HardState DCP State  Occupied  Cartridge PCL
C00d00          dg_c00     true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready     false
C00d01          dg_c00     true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready     false
C00d02          dg_c00     true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready     false
C00d03          dg_c00     true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready     false
C00d04          dg_c00     true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready     false
C00d05          dg_c00     true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready     false
C00d06          dg_c00     true  false  false  ready  unloaded  ready     false
```

- h. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see:

- "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61
- "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45

copan_ov_client Template Reference

A `copan_ov_client` resource defines a COPAN MAID shelf to be used by an OpenVault client. It is used in a COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service or optionally in a DMF HA service. Each shelf requires its own primitive instance.

This template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/copan_ov_client
```

Use the following:

- **COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service:**

```
primitive SHELF ocf:sgi:copan_ov_client \
    op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
    op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
    op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
    params shelf_name="SHELF" \
    meta resource-stickiness="250" migration-threshold="1"
location SHELF-MOVER1-LOCATION SHELF 200: MOVER1
location SHELF-MOVER2-LOCATION SHELF 100: MOVER2
colocation SHELF-CXFS-COLOLOCATION inf: SHELF CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE
order SHELF-CXFS-ORDER inf: CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE SHELF
```

- **DMF HA service:**

```
primitive SHELF ocf:sgi:copan_ov_client \
    op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
    op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
    op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
    params shelf_name="SHELF" \
    meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Note: The `copan_ov_client` template contains two sections, one for a COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service and another for a DMF HA service – you must fill in the values in the section for the service you want to configure and delete the other section entirely.

Variable	Description
<i>SHELF</i>	Name of this resource instance, normally the three-character COPAN shelf ID, using the naming convention described in the <i>COPAN MAID for DMF Quick Start Guide</i> , such as C00 for cabinet 0, shelf 0 (the bottom shelf)
<i>SHELF-MOVER1-LOCATION</i>	Name of the location constraint for the primary parallel data-mover node, such as C00-MOVER1-LOCATION
<i>MOVER1</i>	Name of the primary parallel data-mover node, such as MOVER1
<i>SHELF-MOVER2-LOCATION</i>	Name of the location constraint for the secondary parallel data-mover node, such as C00-MOVER2-LOCATION
<i>MOVER2</i>	Name of the secondary parallel data-mover node, such as MOVER2
<i>SHELF-CXFS-COLOCATION</i>	Name of the colocation constraint, such as C00-CXFS-COLOCATION
<i>CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE</i>	Name of the clone, such as CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE (see "cxf-client-clone Template Reference" on page 103)
<i>SHELF-CXFS-ORDER</i>	Name of the order constraint, such as C00-CXFS-ORDER

For example, for a **COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service**:

```
primitive C00 ocf:sgi:copan_ov_client \
    op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
    op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
    op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
    params shelf_name="C00" \
```

```

meta resource-stickiness="250" migration-threshold="1"

location C00-MOVER1-LOCATION C00 200: MOVER1
location C00-MOVER2-LOCATION C00 100: MOVER2
colocation C00-CXFS-COLOLOCATION inf: C00 CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE
order C00-CXFS-ORDER inf: CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE C00

```

For example, for a **DMF HA service**:

```

primitive C16 ocf:sgi:copan_ov_client \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
  params shelf_name="C16" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"

```

Note: The primitive instance for the COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service requires location, colocation, and order constraints and a high value for resource-stickiness indicates that it will be unlikely to move to the other node, whereas the primitive instance for the DMF HA service requires no constraints and has a resource-stickiness value that matches the rest of the resources in the DMF-GROUP resource (see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122).

The first monitor operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The start operation does the following:

- Starts the COPAN MAID shelf client by ensuring that RAID sets are available and that the OpenVault LCP and at least one DCP are running
- Fails if any of the above conditions are not met

The stop operation does the following:

- Stops the COPAN MAID OpenVault client resource
- Fails if the COPAN MAID OpenVault client resource fails to stop

To add more resources, see:

- "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61
- "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45

cxfs Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "CXFS Requirements" on page 93
- "Test CXFS Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 95
- "Do Not Stop the `cxfs` and `cxfs_cluster` Services Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 96
- "`cxfs` Template Reference" on page 96

CXFS Requirements

The `cxfs` resource agent allows you to associate the location of the CXFS metadata server with other products, such as DMF. This section discusses the following:

- "CXFS Server-Capable Administration Nodes" on page 93
- "CXFS Relocation Support" on page 94
- "Applications that Depend Upon CXFS Filesystems" on page 94
- "CXFS and System Reset" on page 94
- "CXFS Start/Stop Issues" on page 95
- "CXFS Volumes and Filesystems Managed by DMF" on page 95

CXFS Server-Capable Administration Nodes

An HA cluster using the `cxfs` resource agent must include the server-capable administration nodes that are potential metadata servers for every filesystem that is managed by the `cxfs` resource agent.

Certain resources (such as DMF) require that the CXFS metadata server and the HA resource be provided by the same node; see "DMF Requirements" on page 123. Other resources (such as NFS and Samba) do not have this requirement, but it may be desirable to enforce it in order to ensure that these resources provide the best performance possible. (Some NFS and Samba workloads can cause significant

performance problems when the NFS or Samba resource is located on a node that is not the CXFS metadata server.)

Unless otherwise directed by this guide, you should configure the CXFS cluster, nodes, and filesystems according to the instructions in the following:

CXFS 7 Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage
CXFS 7 Client-Only Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage

CXFS Relocation Support

CXFS relocation is provided automatically by the `cxfes` resource agent. In a CXFS cluster running HA software, relocation should only be started by using the tools provided with HA software and not by any other method.

Applications that Depend Upon CXFS Filesystems

If an application uses a CXFS filesystem that is managed by HA software, that application must also be managed by HA software. You must set colocation and start-ordering constraints or ordered resource groups such that:

- The application can only run on the server-capable administration node that is the active CXFS metadata server for the filesystem that it uses.
- The CXFS metadata server will start before the application starts and stop after the application stops

Using a single resource group and configuring in the correct order ensures the proper colocation.

CXFS and System Reset

CXFS server-capable administration nodes must use some sort of system reset in order to prevent conflicts with CXFS I/O fencing methods. In an HA environment, the HA process must control the reset functionality for CXFS. You must use STONITH for system reset and specify the following fail policy in the CXFS configuration:

```
fence, shutdown
```

For more information, see:

- "fence_ipmilan STONITH Template Reference" on page 143

- "ipmi Template Reference" on page 159

CXFS Start/Stop Issues

You must start the CXFS cluster `cxfs_cluster` service and CXFS filesystem `cxfs` service before starting the appropriate underlying HA control services (`cman` and `pacemaker` for RHEL nodes, `openais` for SLES nodes). The `cxfs` resource agent will wait for all of the CXFS filesystems to be mounted by CXFS before attempting any relocation. You must adjust the `start operation timeout` for the `cxfs` resource agent accordingly.

During failover, resources that colocate with the CXFS metadata server must be stopped before the CXFS resource. If a resource fails to shutdown completely, any files left open on the metadata server will prevent relocation. Therefore, the HA fail policy for any resource that could prevent relocation by holding files open must be `fence` and you must configure a STONITH facility according to the requirements for your site. See:

- "fence_ipmilan STONITH Template Reference" on page 143
- "ipmi Template Reference" on page 159

In this case, the offending CXFS metadata server will be reset, causing recovery to an alternate node.

CXFS Volumes and Filesystems Managed by DMF

The CXFS volumes specified for the `cxfs` resource must not include any volumes that represent filesystems managed by DMF.

Test CXFS Before Applying an HA Environment

Do the following:

1. Configure CXFS on `node1` (which must be a CXFS server-capable administration node), according to the instructions in the following:
 - "CXFS Requirements" on page 93
 - *CXFS 7 Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage*

2. Start the CXFS filesystem service (`cxfs`) and CXFS cluster service (`cxfs_cluster`). For more information, see *CXFS 7 Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage*.
3. Verify that the filesystem in question mounts on all applicable nodes. For example, use the `cxfs_admin` command:

```
node1# cxfs_admin -c status
```

Note: If you have multiple clusters on the same network, add the `-i clustername` option to identify the cluster name. For more information, see the `cxfs_admin(8)` man page.

Do Not Stop the `cxfs` and `cxfs_cluster` Services Before Applying an HA Environment

Do not disable the `cxfs` and `cxfs_cluster` services. Unlike other services, these services will not be controlled by HA software in an HA cluster.

cxfs Template Reference

A `cxfs` resource controls of the CXFS metadata location. It is used in a DMF HA service.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs
```

Use the following:

```
primitive CXFS ocf:sgi:cxfs \  
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="180s" on-fail="restart" \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="180s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="fence" \  
  params volnames="VOLUME-LIST" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<i>CXFS</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as <i>CXFS</i>
<i>VOLUME-LIST</i>	Comma-separated list of volumes under the <i>/dev/cxvm</i> directory, such as: <i>cxfsvol1,cxfsvol2</i>
Note: Do not include any links or volumes that are filesystems managed by DMF.	

For example:

```
primitive CXFS ocf:sgi:cxfs \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="180s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="180s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="fence" \
  params volnames="cxfsvol1,cxfsvol2" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Waits until all volumes in *VOLUME-LIST* are mounted by checking */proc/mounts*
- Relocates the metadata server for all volumes in *VOLUME-LIST*
- Waits for all volumes in *VOLUME-LIST* to be owned by the local node according to *clconf_info* output
- Never explicitly fails, but can time out

The `stop` operation never explicitly fails, but can time out.

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the COPAN MAID OpenVault HA Service" on page 67.

cxfs-client Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Test the CXFS Client Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 99
- "Stop the `cxfs_client` Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 99
- "cxfs-client Template Reference" on page 100

Test the CXFS Client Before Applying an HA Environment

Using this resource in an HA environment presumes the CXFS client is already running. Before applying an HA environment, you should do the following:

1. Ensure that the node is a member of the CXFS cluster. For example:

```
node1# /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_info
```

2. Ensure that the CXFS client service is running:

```
node1# service cxfs-client status
```

If it is not running, start it:

```
node1# service cxfs-client start
```

3. Ensure that filesystems are mounted. For example:

```
node1# df
```

Stop the `cxfs_client` Service Before Applying an HA Environment

To use the `cxfs-client` resource, you must stop the `cxfs_client` service on each node before applying HA:

```
node1# chkconfig cxfs_client off
node1# service cxfs_client stop
```

```
node2# chkconfig cxfs_client off
node2# service cxfs_client stop
```

The HA software will control this service.

cxfss-client Template Reference

A `cxfss-client` resource controls the CXFS client. It is used in the CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service and in the COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfss-client
```

Use the following:

```
primitive CXFS-CLIENT ocf:sgi:cxfss-client \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="30s" \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="30s" on-fail="restart" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="fence" \
  params volnames="VOLUME-LIST"
```

Variable

CXFS-CLIENT

VOLUME-LIST

Description

Name of this resource instance, such as `CXFS-CLIENT`

Comma-separated list of volume names under the `/dev/cxvm` directory, as appropriate for the HA service:

- **CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service:** the CXFS filesystems to be served via NFS, such as `cxfsvol1,cxfsvol2`
- **COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service:** all of the managed filesystems and the DMF administrative filesystems represented by the following parameters in the DMF configuration file:

```
CACHE_DIR
SPOOL_DIR
TMP_DIR
MOVE_FS
STORE_DIRECTORY for a DCM MSP
```

For example, suppose you have the following output:

```
# ls /dev/cxvm
cache          dmfsr2        move
diskmsp       home          spool
```

```
dmfusr1      journal      tmp
```

Note: In a COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service, you should not include the HOME_DIR or JOURNAL_DIR filesystems because a parallel data-mover node typically needs no access to these filesystems.

You would likely enter the following (everything except home and journal):

```
cache,diskmsp,dmfusr1,dmfusr2,move,spool,tmp
```

For example, for the **CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service**:

```
primitive CXFS-CLIENT ocf:sgi:cxf-client \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="30s" \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="30s" on-fail="restart" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="fence" \
  params volnames="cxfsvol1,cxfsvol2"
```

For example, for the **COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service**:

```
primitive CXFS-CLIENT ocf:sgi:cxf-client \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="30s" \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="30s" on-fail="restart" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="fence" \
  params volnames="cache,diskmsp,dmfusr1,dmfusr2,move,spool,tmp"
```

The first monitor operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Starts the CXFS client by calling the following:

```
service cxfs_client start
```

- Checks the `/proc/mounts` file until all volumes in *VOLUME-LIST* are mounted
- Fails if the CXFS client fails to start

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Stops the CXFS client by calling the following:

```
service cxfs_client stop
```

- Fails if the CXFS client fails to stop

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45.

cxfs-client-clone Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "No Preliminary Testing Required" on page 103
- "cxfs-client-clone Template Reference" on page 103

No Preliminary Testing Required

The clone itself does not require any testing before applying an HA environment.

cxfs-client-clone Template Reference

A clone resource named `CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE` implements control of a CXFS client. It is used in a COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client-clone
```

Use the following:

```
clone CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE CXFS-CLIENT \  
    meta clone-max="2" target-role="Stopped" interleave="true"
```

Variable	Description
<i>CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE</i>	Name of this clone instance, such as <code>CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE</code>
<i>CXFS-CLIENT</i>	Name of the <code>cxfs-client</code> resource instance (see "cxfs-client Template Reference" on page 100), such as <code>CXFS-CLIENT</code>

For example:

```
clone CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE CXFS-CLIENT \  
    meta clone-max="2" target-role="Stopped" interleave="true"
```

The `target-role` is initially set to `Stopped` because you do not want the clone to start until you are ready to test it.

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the COPAN MAID OpenVault HA Service" on page 67.

cxfs-client-nfsserver Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "CXFS NFS Edge-Serving Requirements" on page 105
- "Additional Requirements for Multiple Edge-Serving HA Clusters" on page 107
- "Test the NFS Edge Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 108
- "Stop the NFS Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 109
- "cxfs-client-nfsserver Template Reference" on page 110

CXFS NFS Edge-Serving Requirements

CXFS NFS edge-serving in an HA environment has the following requirements:

- NFS version 3 (NFS v3) or NFS version 4 (NFS v4).
- An HA cluster of two CXFS client-only nodes. The nodes must run the CXFS edge-serving software.

- *(RHEL only)* On all RHEL nodes, do the following:
 1. Set the following in the `/etc/sysconfig/nfs` file:

```
START_SMNOTIFY="no"
```
 2. Ensure that NFS lock services are started at boot time:
 - On RHEL node1:

```
node1# chkconfig nfslock on
```
 - On RHEL node2:

```
node2# chkconfig nfslock on
```
- Ensure that the edge-serving node is not an NFS client. (The NFS client service on a CXFS NFS edge-serving node does not support monitored locking.)
- There must be a file (located on shared storage) that will be used for keeping kernel state information. (In a non-HA cluster, this would be the `/var/lib/nfs/state` file.) The file must be shared as follows:
 - All edge-serving nodes within a given HA cluster must share this file
 - If there are multiple HA clusters for edge-serving nodes within one CXFS cluster, all of the cluster systems must share this fileThe `statefile` attribute for the CXFS client NFS server identifies this file.
- There must be a directory (located on shared storage) that will be used to store the NFS lock state. (In a non-HA cluster, this would be the `/var/lib/nfs/` directory.) The directory must be shared as follows:
 - All edge-serving nodes within a given HA cluster must share this directory
 - If there are multiple HA clusters for multiple CXFS NFS edge-serving HA services within one CXFS cluster, each must have a separate state directoryThe `statedir` instance attribute for the CXFS client NFS server identifies this directory.

Additional Requirements for Multiple Edge-Serving HA Clusters

There can be multiple two-node NFS edge-serving HA clusters within one CXFS cluster if the following are true:

- **Identical** among all HA clusters within a single CXFS cluster:
 - *GRACEDIR* value for the `cxfs-client-smnotify` resource
 - *STATEFILE* value for the `cxfs-client-smnotify` and `cxfs-client-nfsserver` resources
- **Unique** to each HA cluster within a single CXFS cluster:
 - *STATEDIR* value for the `cxfs-client-nfsserver`, and `cxfs-client-smnotify` resources

The following figure illustrates which values are unique and which are shared.

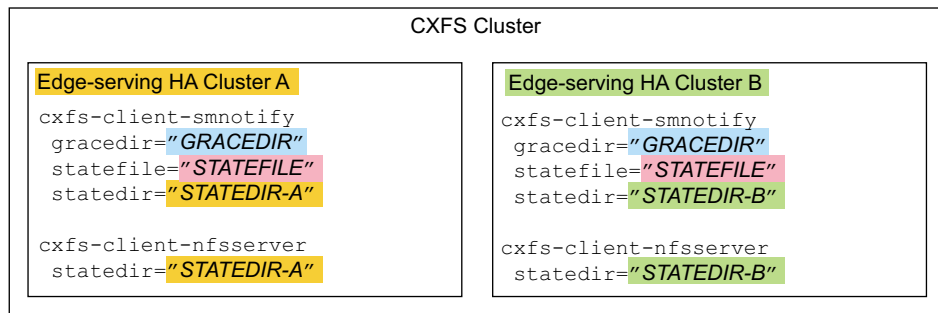


Figure 13-1 Two NFS Edge-Serving HA Clusters

Test the NFS Edge Service Before Applying an HA Environment

Set up the NFS exports in the `/etc/exports` file on both CXFS client-only nodes as you would normally. The `/etc/exports` file should be identical on both nodes.

Note: Be sure to include the `fsid=uniquenumber` export option in order to prevent stale file handles after failover.

To test the CXFS NFS edge-serving non-HA service, do the following:

1. Ensure that the node is a member of the CXFS cluster and has filesystems mounted. For example:

```
node1# /usr/cluster/bin/cxfss_info
node1# df
```

2. Ensure that the NFS service is running:

- RHEL:

```
rhel# service nfs status
```

If it is not running, start it:

```
rhel# service nfs start
```

- SLES:

```
sles# service nfsserver status
```

If it is not running, start it:

```
sles# service nfsserver start
```

3. Export the filesystem from node1:

- a. Configure `/etc/exports`.
- b. Export the CXFS filesystems:

```
node1# exportfs -a
```


- c. Run the following command on node1 to verify that the filesystems are exported:

```
node1# exportfs -v
/nfsexportedfilesystem <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=xxx)
```

4. NFS-mount and test the filesystem from node1:

- a. Mount the filesystems on a node that will not be a member of the HA cluster (otherhost):

- NFS v3:

```
otherhost# mount -t nfs -o vers=3 node1:/nfsexportedfilesystem /mnt/test
```

- NFS v4:

```
otherhost# mount -t nfs -o vers=4 node1:/nfsexportedfilesystem /mnt/test
```

- b. Read and write to the NFS-mounted filesystems:

```
otherhost# echo "test data for a test file" > /mnt/test/testFile1A
otherhost# cat /mnt/test/testFile1A
test data for a test file
```

5. Repeat steps 3 and 4, exporting and then mounting the filesystem from node2.

Stop the NFS Service Before Applying an HA Environment

To use the `cxfs-client-nfsserver` resource, you must stop the NFS service on each node before applying an HA environment, according to the operating system:

- RHEL:

```
rhel_node1# chkconfig nfs off
rhel_node1# service nfs stop
```

```
rhel_node2# chkconfig nfs off
rhel_node2# service nfs stop
```

- SLES:

```
sles_node1# chkconfig nfsserver off
sles_node1# service nfsserver stop
```

```
sles_node2# chkconfig nfsserver off
sles_node2# service nfsserver stop
```

The HA software will control this service.

cxfs-client-nfsserver Template Reference

A `cxfs-client-nfsserver` resource controls the NFS server running on a CXFS client. It is used in a CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service. It is part of a clone resource that runs on both nodes in the cluster.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client-nfsserver
```

Use the following:

```
primitive NFS ocf:sgi:cxfs-client-nfsserver \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="300s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" \
  params nfs_init_script="NFS-INIT-PATH" statedir="STATEDIR" \
    statefile="STATEFILE" volnames="VOLUME-LIST" \
    nfslock_init_script="NFSLOCK-INIT-PATH"
```

Variable	Description
<i>NFS</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>NFS</code>
<i>NFS-INIT-PATH</i>	Path to the NFS initialization script: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RHEL: <code>/etc/init.d/nfs</code>• SLES: <code>/etc/init.d/nfsserver</code>
<i>NFSLOCK-INIT-PATH</i>	Path to the <code>nfslock</code> initialization script: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RHEL: <code>/etc/init.d/nfslock</code>

<i>STATEDIR</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SLES: (not used) <p>Directory in the NFS filesystem that will be used to store NFS file-lock state for this HA cluster (equivalent to <code>/var/lib/nfs/</code> in a nonclustered configuration), such as:</p> <pre>/mnt/cxfsvoll1/statd/nfs1-nfs2</pre> <hr/> <p>Note: This value must be unique to this HA cluster.</p> <hr/>
<i>STATEFILE</i>	<p>File in the NFS filesystem that will store NFS file-lock state for all of the NFS edge-serving HA clusters (equivalent to <code>/var/lib/nfs/state</code> in a nonclustered configuration), such as:</p> <pre>/mnt/cxfsvoll1/statd/state</pre> <hr/> <p>Note: This value must be identical to the <i>STATEFILE</i> value specified for <code>cxfs-client-smnotify</code>. All HA clusters within a CXFS cluster must have an identical <i>STATEFILE</i> value.</p> <hr/>
<i>VOLUME-LIST</i>	<p>Comma-separated list of volume names containing CXFS filesystems that are to be served via NFS, such as:</p> <pre>cxfsvoll1</pre>

For example:

```
primitive NFS ocf:sgi:cxfs-client-nfsserver \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="300s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" \
  params nfs_init_script="/etc/init.d/nfsserver" \
        statedir="/mnt/cxfsvoll1/statd/nfs1-nfs2" \
        statefile="/mnt/cxfsvoll1/statd/state" volnames="cxfsvoll1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Creates the `STATEDIR` directory and `STATEFILE` file as needed
- (*NFS v3 only*) Updates `/etc/sysconfig/nfs` to set the following:
 - `statd_options` to `-p STATEDIR -s STATEFILE`
 - `start_smnotify` to `no`
- Enables NLM grace notification for all volumes in `VOLUME-LIST`
- Starts the NFS server:
 - RHEL:

```
service nfs start
```
 - SLES:

```
service nfsserver start
```
- Fails if the NFS server does not start or if the NLM grace notification cannot be enabled

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Stops the NFS server:
 - RHEL:

```
service nfs stop
```
 - SLES:

```
service nfsserver stop
```
- Disables NLM grace notification for all volumes in `VOLUME-LIST`
- Fails if the NFS server does not stop or if the NLM grace notification cannot be disabled

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45.

cxfs-client-smnotify Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "No Preliminary Testing Required" on page 113
- "cxfs-client-smnotify Template Reference" on page 113

No Preliminary Testing Required

This resource does not require any preliminary testing before applying HA.

cxfs-client-smnotify Template Reference

A `cxfs-client-smnotify` resource controls NFS client notification of NFS server failovers and restarts. It is used in a CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service as part of a group resource that includes an `IPaddr2` resource.

The templated is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-client-smnotify
```

Use the following:

```
primitive SMNOTIFY-X ocf:sgi:cxfs-client-smnotify \
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
    op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
    op start interval="0" timeout="30s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
    op stop interval="0" timeout="30s" on-fail="fence" \
    params ipalias="IPADDRESS-ALIAS" statedir="STATEDIR" statefile="STATEFILE" \
        gracedir="GRACEDIR" hostname="IPALIAS-HOST" \
        seconds="120" volnames="VOLUME-LIST" \
    meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<code>SMNOTIFY-X</code>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>SMNOTIFY-1</code>
<code>IPALIAS-ADDRESS</code>	IP address of the alias associated with the NFS client-lock state, which is reclaimed by the NFS client

<i>STATEDIR</i>	<p>from the NFS server when it receives the NSM reboot notification that is initiated by the <code>cxf-client-smnotify</code> resource agent, for example 128.162.244.244</p> <p>Directory in the NFS filesystem that will be used to store NFS file-lock state for this NFS edge-serving HA cluster.</p> <hr/> <p>Note: This value must be identical to the <i>STATEDIR</i> value specified for <code>cxf-client-nfserver</code>, and must be unique to this HA cluster.</p> <hr/>
<i>STATEFILE</i>	<p>File in the NFS filesystem that will store NFS file-lock state for all of the NFS edge-serving HA clusters within one CXFS cluster (equivalent to <code>/var/lib/nfs/state</code> in a nonclustered configuration), such as:</p> <pre>/mnt/cxfsvol1/statd/state</pre> <hr/> <p>Note: This value must be identical to the <i>STATEFILE</i> value specified for <code>cxf-client-nfserver</code>. All HA clusters within a CXFS cluster must have an identical <i>STATEFILE</i> value.</p> <hr/>
<i>GRACEDIR</i>	<p>Directory on the NFS file-lock-state filesystem that specifies the directory containing the grace-period state (the grace period specified by the <code>seconds</code> attribute is the time during which the CXFS tokens owned by a given CXFS client will be maintained by that client to permit time for failover), such as:</p> <pre>/mnt/cxfsvol1/grace</pre> <hr/> <p>Note: All HA clusters within a CXFS cluster must have an identical <i>GRACEDIR</i> value.</p> <hr/>
<i>IPALIAS-HOST</i>	<p>Hostname of <i>IPALIAS-ADDRESS</i>, which must match what is in <code>/etc/hosts</code> or be resolvable with DNS, such as <code>hostalias1</code> or <code>hostalias2</code></p>

VOLUME-LIST

Comma-separated list of all volumes that will be served via *IPALIAS-HOST*, such as:

cxfsvoll

For example:

```
primitive SMNOTIFY-1 ocf:sgi:cxfs-client-smnotify \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="30s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="30s" on-fail="fence" \
  params ipalias="128.162.244.244" statedir="/mnt/cxfsvoll/statd/nfs1-nfs2" \
    statefile="/mnt/cxfsvoll/statd/state" \
    gracedir="/mnt/cxfsvoll/grace" hostname="myhost" \
    seconds="120" volnames="cxfsvoll" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Ends any active NLM grace period for the IP address alias
- Runs `sm-notify` to send out an NSM reboot notification to clients
- Fails if `sm-notify` returns an error

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Starts an NLM grace period for the IP address alias
- Drops all locks associated with the IP address alias
- Fails if locks cannot be dropped

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45.

cxfs-nfs-clone Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "No Preliminary Testing Required" on page 117
- "cxfs-nfs-clone Template Reference" on page 117

No Preliminary Testing Required

The clone itself does not require any testing before applying an HA environment.

cxfs-nfs-clone Template Reference

A clone resource named `CXFS-NFS-CLONE` implements a CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service. It consists of a group (such as `CXFS-NFS-GROUP`) constructed of two resources (such as `CXFS-CLIENT` and `NFS`).

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/cxfs-nfs-clone
```

Use the following:

```
group CXFS-NFS-GROUP CXFS-CLIENT NFS
clone CXFS-NFS-CLONE CXFS-NFS-GROUP \
    meta clone-max="2" target-role="Stopped" interleave="true"
```

Variable	Description
<i>CXFS-NFS-GROUP</i>	Name of this group instance, such as <code>CXFS-NFS-GROUP</code>
<i>CXFS-CLIENT</i>	Name of the <code>cxfs-client</code> resource instance (see "cxfs-client Template Reference" on page 100), such as <code>CXFS-CLIENT</code>
<i>NFS</i>	Name of the <code>nfsserver</code> resource instance (see "nfsserver Template Reference" on page 180), such as <code>NFS</code>

CXFS-NFS-CLONE Name of this clone instance, such as
CXFS-NFS-CLONE

For example:

```
group CXFS-NFS-GROUP CXFS-CLIENT NFS
clone CXFS-NFS-CLONE CXFS-NFS-GROUP \
    meta clone-max="2" target-role="Stopped" interleave="true"
```

To add more resources, see:

- "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45
- "Create the Clone" on page 49

DMF-GROUP Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "No Preliminary Testing Required" on page 119
- "DMF-GROUP for the CXFS Environment" on page 119
- "DMF-GROUP for the Local XVM Environment" on page 121
- "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122

No Preliminary Testing Required

The clone itself does not require any testing before applying an HA environment.

DMF-GROUP for the CXFS Environment

The purpose of this resource is to ensure that the defined filesystems run on the DMF server in a CXFS environment. This resource controls the location of the CXFS metadata server for CXFS filesystems that must be run on the DMF server, such as the DMF administrative filesystems, filesystems holding OpenVault server configuration, and filesystems for NFS/Samba configuration. This resource must not include any filesystems managed by DMF.

See the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide* for filesystem requirements, such as mount options.

Do the following:

1. Create a new partial configuration file (*workfile*) that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP CXFS
```

2. Copy the `primitive` text from the `cxfs` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "cxfs Template Reference" on page 96.
3. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
4. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.

5. Save *workfile*.

6. Update the database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

Note: As a best practice, you should also run the following command to verify changes you make to the CIB:

```
node1# crm_verify -LV
```

For simplicity, this step is not included in the following procedures but is recommended. For more information, see "Use the `crm_verify` Command to Verify Configuration" on page 24.

7. Test the resource:

a. Verify that CXFS is working on `node1`. For example:

i. Verify that all of the CXFS filesystems are mounted and accessible:

```
node1# df -lh
```

ii. Display the current metadata server for the filesystems:

Note: If you have multiple clusters on the same network, add the `-i clustername` option to identify the cluster name. For more information, see the `cxfs_admin(8)` man page.

```
node1# /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_admin -c "show server"
```

b. Move the resource group containing the `cxfs` resource to `node2`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

c. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

d. Verify that CXFS is working on `node2`:

```
node2# df -lh
```

```
node2# /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_admin -c "show server"
```

Note: Only those volumes in `/dev/cxvm` that are **not** managed by DMF will now be served on `node2` instead of `node1`.

- e. Move the resource group containing the `cxfs` resource back to `node1`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- f. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- g. Verify that CXFS is working again on `node1`:

```
node1# df -lh
```

```
node1# /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_admin -c "show server"
```

- h. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

DMF-GROUP for the Local XVM Environment

The DMF HA service in a local XVM environment requires the `lxvm` and `Filesystem` resources:

- "Configure Local XVM for an HA Environment" on page 168
- "Configuring the `Filesystem` Resource for High Availability" on page 145

Note: See the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide* for filesystem requirements, such as mount options.

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

DMF-GROUP Template Reference

The DMF HA implementation uses a single `group` resource that contains all of the other required resources, so that HA processes can coherently control all of the resources, starting and stopping them in the required order. (The name of the group can be any name you choose.)

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/DMF-GROUP
```

Following are some sample `group` definitions, including optional resources:

- A CXFS environment using OpenVault:

```
group DMF-GROUP CXFS IP OV DMF NFS etc_samba var_lib_samba SMB NMB DMFMAN DMFSOAP
```

- A CXFS environment using TMF:

```
group DMF-GROUP CXFS IP TMF DMF NFS etc_samba var_lib_samba SMB NMB DMFMAN DMFSOAP
```

- A local XVM environment using OpenVault:

```
group DMF-GROUP LXVM dmfusr1 dmfusr2 home spool move_fs journals \  
    tmp move_fs cache store IP OV DMF NFS etc_samba var_lib_samba \  
    SMB NMB DMFMAN DMFSOAP
```

- A local XVM environment using TMF:

```
group DMF-GROUP LXVM dmfusr1 dmfusr2 home spool move_fs journals \  
    tmp move_fs cache store IP TMF DMF NFS etc_samba var_lib_samba \  
    SMB NMB DMFMAN DMFSOAP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

dmf Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "DMF Requirements" on page 123
- "Test DMF Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 125
- "Stop the dmf Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 126
- "Configure DMF an HA Environment" on page 126
- "dmf Template Reference" on page 131

DMF Requirements

Using DMF with HA software requires the following:

- The HA cluster must contain all nodes that could be DMF servers.
- Each potential DMF server must run the required product and HA software.
- Each potential DMF server must have the `ident` service started and configured to restart on reboot, as documented in the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.
- All potential DMF server nodes in the HA cluster must have connectivity to the same set of libraries and drives. (If one node has access to only a subset of the drives when the DMF server is failed over to that node, at that point DMF would not be able to access data on volumes left mounted in inaccessible drives.)
- All DMF server nodes must have connectivity to all of the CXFS and XFS® filesystems that DMF either depends upon or manages:
 - Each of the local XVM volumes that make up those filesystems must be managed by an `lxvm` resource within the same resource group as the `dmf` resource. Each of the XFS filesystems must be managed by a `Filesystem` resource in that resource group.
 - Each of the CXFS filesystems (other than managed user filesystems) must be managed by the `cxfs` resource in that resource group.

The DMF filesystems to be managed are as follows:

- The managed user filesystems (do not include these in the `volnames` attribute list for the `cxfs` resource)
- DMF administrative filesystems specified by the following parameters in the DMF configuration file:
 - `HOME_DIR`
 - `JOURNAL_DIR`
 - `SPOOL_DIR`
 - `TMP_DIR`
 - `MOVE_FS`
 - `CACHE_DIR` for any library servers
 - `STORE_DIRECTORY` for any disk cache manager (DCM) and disk MSPs using local disk storage

DMF requires independent paths to drives so that they are not fenced by CXFS. The ports for the drive paths on the switch should be masked from I/O fencing in a CXFS configuration.

The SAN must be zoned so that XVM does not move CXFS filesystem I/O to the paths visible through the HBA ports when Fibre Channel port fencing occurs. Therefore, you should use either independent switches or independent switch zones for CXFS/XVM volume paths and DMF drive paths.

For more information about DMF filesystems, see the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.

- The ordering of resources within a resource group containing a `dmf` resource must be such that the `dmf` resource starts after any filesystems it uses are mounted and volume resources it uses are available (and the `dmf` resource must be stopped before those resources are stopped). See Figure 6-1 on page 62.
- There must be a virtual hostname for use by DMF. See "IP Address Alias Requirements" on page 151.
- If you are using the DMF Parallel Data-Mover Option, you must define a `node` object in the DMF configuration file for each potential DMF server. Set the `INTERFACE` parameter in the `node` object for each potential DMF server to the same virtual hostname used for `SERVER_NAME` in the base object.

- On all HA nodes during HA operation, disable the `dmf` service from being started automatically at boot time:

```
ha# chkconfig dmf off
```

The HA software will control this service.

Also see:

- "DMF Manager Requirements" on page 133
- "DMF Client SOAP Service Requirements" on page 139

Test DMF Before Applying an HA Environment

Configure DMF according to the instructions in the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.

To test the DMF service before applying HA, do the following:

1. Migrate a few test files:

```
node1# dmput -r files_to_test
```

2. Force volumes to be immediately written:

```
node1# dmdidle
```

Wait a bit to allow time for the volume to be written and unmounted.

3. Verify that the volumes are mounted and written successfully.
4. Verify that the volumes can be read and the data can be retrieved:

```
node1# dmget files_to_test
```

Stop the dmF Service Before Applying an HA Environment

To use the dmF resource, you must stop the dmF service on each node before applying an HA environment:

```
node1# chkconfig dmF off
node1# service dmF stop
```

```
node2# chkconfig dmF off
node2# service dmF stop
```

The HA software will control this service.

Note: There are other associated services that you must stop when using a DMF HA environment. See "Stop Services Related to DMF Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 64.

Configure DMF an HA Environment

Note: The following procedure requires that the DMF application instances in OpenVault are configured to use a wildcard ("*") for the hostname and instance name. For more information, see the chapter about mounting service configuration tasks in the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.

Do the following:

1. Make the filesystem backup inventory accessible from all DMF servers in the HA cluster.

The backup of managed user filesystems and DMF administrative filesystems is always performed on the active DMF server based upon parameters in the DMF configuration file. The `xfsdump` command maintains an inventory of all backups performed within the directory `/var/lib/xfsdump`. In an HA environment, the active DMF server node can change over time; therefore (in order for `xfsdump` to maintain a consistent inventory) it must be able to access the inventory for all past backups, even if those backups were created on another node.

SGI recommends that you make the inventory accessible to all DMF server nodes by relocating it into an HA-managed DMF administrative filesystem within the same resource group as DMF. For example, create a site-specific directory in the

directory specified by the DMF HOME_DIR configuration parameter, such as /dmf/home/site_specific:

- On node1 (which currently contains the inventory), enter the following:

```
node1# cd /var/lib
node1# cp -r xfsdump /dmf/home/site_specific/xfsdump
node1# mv xfsdump xfsdump.bak
node1# ln -s /dmf/home/site_specific/xfsdump xfsdump
```

Note: In a brand-new DMF installation, the /var/lib/xfsdump directory will not exist until after a backup has been performed.

- On node2, enter the following:

```
node2# cd /var/lib
node2# mv xfsdump xfsdump.bak
node2# ln -s /dmf/home/site_specific/xfsdump xfsdump
```

Note: It is the /var/lib/xfsdump directory that should be shared, rather than the /var/lib/xfsdump/inventory directory. If there are inventories stored on various nodes, you can use xfsinvutil to merge them into a single common inventory, prior to sharing the inventory among the nodes in the cluster.

2. On node1, modify the DMF configuration file as follows:

- Set the MAX_MS_RESTARTS parameter in the appropriate drivegroup objects to 0 so that DMF will not restart the mounting service.
- Set the DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY parameter so that it uses a DMF HA administrative filesystem that is on a different disk from the live inventory created above in step 1. If the live inventory in /dmf/home/site_specific/xfsdump is lost, you can then recreate it from the inventory backup in DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY. For example, you could create the directory /dmf/journal/site_specific/inventory_copy for use in DUMP_INVENTORY_COPY.
- (*OpenVault only*) Set the MSG_DELAY parameter in the drivegroup objects to a value of slightly more than 2 minutes.
- Set the SERVER_NAME parameter for the base object to the HA virtual hostname of the DMF server.

Note: If you change this parameter, you must copy the DMF configuration file (`/etc/dmf/dmf.conf`) manually to each parallel data-mover node and then restart the services related to DMF. Do not change this parameter while DMF is running.

- Set the `INTERFACE` parameter in the `node` object for each potential DMF server node to the same virtual hostname used for `SERVER_NAME` in the base object.
 - (*DMF Parallel Data-Mover Option only*) Create `node` objects for each potential DMF server and set the `INTERFACE` parameter in those `node` objects to the same virtual hostname used for `SERVER_NAME` in the base object.
-

Note: If you are not using the DMF Parallel Data-Mover Option, then no `node` objects are needed.

For more information, see the `dmf.conf(5)` man page and the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.

3. Copy the DMF configuration file (`/etc/dmf/dmf.conf`) from `node1` to `node2` and to any parallel data-mover nodes in the DMF configuration. You may wish to use a symbolic link on `node1` and on `node2` that points to a shared location specified by the `HOME_DIR` parameter in the DMF configuration file. For example:

```
ha# ln -s /dmf/home/dmf.conf /etc/dmf/dmf.conf
```

Note: You cannot use a symbolic link for parallel data-mover nodes because DMF itself keeps the `dmf.conf` file synchronized with the server node.

4. If you are using OpenVault and you **explicitly set** hostnames when you defined the `ov_keys` file during initial OpenVault setup, edit the `ov_keys` file and replace the hostname in the first field of the lines containing “dmf” with the OpenVault virtual hostname. For example, if the `virtualhost` value in the *workfile* is `myvirtualhost`, the result would be:

```
myvirtualhost  dmf  *  CAPI none
myvirtualhost  dmf  *  AAPI none
```

Note: If you used a wildcard hostname (*) when you defined the `ov_keys` file during initial OpenVault setup, there is no need to edit this file.

5. Create another *workfile* that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources DMF
```

For more information about the group definition, see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122.

6. Copy the `primitive` in the `dmf` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "dmf Template Reference" on page 131.
7. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
8. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
9. Save *workfile*.
10. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

11. Test the resource:

- a. Verify that DMF has started by using the `dmdstat -v` command and manual `dmput` and `dmget` commands on node1:

```
node1# dmdstat -v
node1# xfs_mkfile size test_file
node1# dmput -r test_file
node1# dmdidle
(wait a bit to allow time for the volume to be written and unmounted)
node1# dmget test_file
node1# rm test_file
```

- b. Move the resource group containing the dmF resource to node2:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- c. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- d. Verify that DMF has started on the new node by using the `dmdstat -v` command and manual `dmput` and `dmget` commands on node2:

```
node2# dmdstat -v
node2# xfs_mkfile size another_test_file
node2# dmput -r another_test_file
node2# dmdidle
(wait a bit to allow time for the volume to be written and unmounted)
node2# dmget another_test_file
node2# rm another_test_file
```

- e. Move the resource group containing the dmF resource back to node1:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- f. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- g. Verify that DMF has started by using the `dmdstat -v` command and manual `dmput` and `dmget` commands on node1:

```
node1# dmdstat -v
node1# xfs_mkfile size test_file
node1# dmput -r test_file
```

```
node1# dmdidle
(wait a bit to allow time for the volume to be written and unmounted)
node1# dmget test_file
node1# rm test_file
```

- h. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative `move` command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

dmf Template Reference

This template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/dmf
```

A `dmf` resource starts/stops DMF. It is used in a DMF HA service.

Use the following:

```
primitive DMF ocf:sgi:dmf \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
  params monitor_level="0" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<i>DMF</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>DMF</code>

Note: In a CXFS environment, ensure that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site; you must account for the time required to relocate the CXFS metadata server for the managed filesystems.

For example:

```
primitive DMF ocf:sgi:dmf \  
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \  
  params monitor_level="0" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Starts DMF by calling the following:

```
service dmf start
```

- Waits for a successful DMF startup by calling `dmstat` in a loop until `dmfdaemon` responds successfully
- Fails if `dmfdaemon` does not respond to a `dmdstat` query before the resource times out

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Stops DMF by calling the following:

```
service dmf stop
```

- Issues a `dmclrmount` command
- Fails if DMF could not be stopped

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

dmfman Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "DMF Manager Requirements" on page 133
- "Test DMF Manager Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 133
- "Stop the dmfman Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 133
- "Configure DMF Manager for an HA Environment" on page 134
- "dmfman Template Reference" on page 136

DMF Manager Requirements

On all HA nodes during HA operation, disable the dmfman service from being started automatically at boot time:

```
ha# chkconfig dmfman off
```

The HA software will control this service.

Test DMF Manager Before Applying an HA Environment

To verify that DMF Manager is operational, start it according to the directions in *DMF 6 Administrator Guide* and access it by pointing your browser to the following address:

```
https://YOUR_DMF_SERVER:11109
```

Then verify that you can log in and use DMF Manager, such as by viewing the **Overview** panel.

Stop the dmfman Service Before Applying an HA Environment

To use the dmfman resource, you must stop the dmfman service on both nodes:

```
node1# chkconfig dmfman off  
node1# chkconfig dmfman off
```

```
node2# chkconfig dmfmman off
node2# chkconfig dmfmman off
```

The HA software will control this service.

Note: There are other associated services that you must stop. See "Stop Services Related to DMF Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 64.

Configure DMF Manager for an HA Environment

To configure DMF Manager for an HA environment, do the following:

1. Run the `dmfmman_setup_ha` script to create the required links and directories in a commonly accessible filesystem (such as the directory specified by the `HOME_DIR` parameter in the DMF configuration file) that will allow DMF statistics archives to be accessible across the HA cluster:

- On node1:

```
node1# /usr/lib/dmf/dmfmman_setup_ha -d HOME_DIR
```

- On node2:

```
node2# /usr/lib/dmf/dmfmman_setup_ha -d HOME_DIR
```

For example, if the `HOME_DIR` parameter is set to `/dmf/home` in `/etc/dmf/dmf.conf`, you would enter the following:

- On node1:

```
node1# /usr/lib/dmf/dmfmman_setup_ha -d /dmf/home
```

- On node2:

```
node2# /usr/lib/dmf/dmfmman_setup_ha -d /dmf/home
```

2. Create another *workfile* that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources DMFMAN
```

For more information about the group definition, see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122.

3. Copy the primitive in the `dmfman` template to *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "dmfman Template Reference" on page 136.

4. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.

5. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.

6. Save *workfile*.

7. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

8. Test the new resource:

- a. Point your browser at `https://virtualIPAddress:11109` and verify that you can log in and use DMF Manager, such as viewing the **Overview** panel. For more information about using DMF Manager, see *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.

- b. Move the resource group containing the `dmfman` resource from `node1` to `node2`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- c. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- d. Repeat step 8a to verify that DMF Manager is still available.

- e. Move the resource group containing the `dmfman` resource back to `node1`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- f. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- g. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command executed above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

dmfmnan Template Reference

This template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/dmfmnan
```

A dmfmnan resource controls DMF Manager. It may be used in a DMF HA service.

Use the following:

```
primitive DMFMAN ocf:sgi:dmfmnan \  
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
    op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
    op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \  
    meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="100"
```

Variable	Description
<i>DMFMAN</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as DMFMAN

For example:

```
primitive DMFMAN ocf:sgi:dmfmnan \  
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
    op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
    op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \  
    meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="100"
```

The monitor operation probes to see if the resource is already running.

The start operation does the following:

- Starts DMF Manger by calling the following:

```
service dmfmnan start
```
- Waits for DMF Manager to start successfully by calling the following in a loop:

```
service dmfmnan status
```
- Fails if DMF Manager does not start successfully before the resource times out

The stop operation does the following:

- Stops DMF Manger by calling the following:

```
service dmfmnan stop
```

- Verifies the DMF Manager status by calling the following:

```
service dmfmman status
```

- Fails if DMF Manager does not stop successfully

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

dmfsoap Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "DMF Client SOAP Service Requirements" on page 139
- "Test the DMF Client SOAP Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 139
- "Stop the dmfsoap Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 139
- "Configure DMF Client SOAP Service for an HA Environment" on page 140
- "dmfsoap Template Reference" on page 141

DMF Client SOAP Service Requirements

On all HA nodes during HA operation, disable the dmfsoap service from being started automatically at boot time:

```
ha# chkconfig dmfsoap off
```

The HA software will control this service.

Test the DMF Client SOAP Service Before Applying an HA Environment

To verify that the standard DMF client SOAP service is operational, start it according to the directions in *DMF 6 Administrator Guide* and access it by pointing your browser to the following address:

```
https://YOUR_DMF_SERVER:11110/server.php
```

Then verify that you can access the DMF client SOAP GUI and view the WSDL for one of the DMF client functions.

Stop the dmfsoap Service Before Applying an HA Environment

To use the dmfsoap resource, you must stop the dmfsoap service on both nodes:

```
node1# chkconfig dmfssoap off
node1# chkconfig dmfssoap off
```

```
node2# chkconfig dmfssoap off
node2# chkconfig dmfssoap off
```

The HA software will control this service.

Note: There are other associated services that you must stop. See "Stop Services Related to DMF Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 64.

Configure DMF Client SOAP Service for an HA Environment

To configure the DMF client SOAP service for an HA environment, do the following:

1. Create another *workfile* that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Addeded_Resources DMFSOAP
```

2. Copy the primitive in the `dmfssoap` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments.
3. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
4. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
5. Save *workfile*.
6. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

7. Test the new resource:
 - a. Point your browser at `https://virtualIPaddress:11110/server.php` and verify that you can access the GUI and view the WSDL for one of the DMF client functions. For more information, see *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.
 - b. Move the resource group containing the `dmfssoap` resource from `node1` to `node2`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```


- c. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- d. Repeat step 7a to verify that the DMF client SOAP service is still available.

- e. Move the resource group containing the `dmfsoap` resource back to `node1`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- f. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- g. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative `move` command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

dmfsoap Template Reference

This template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/dmfsoap
```

A `dmfsoap` resource controls the DMF client Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) service. It may optionally be used in a DMF HA service.

Use the following:

```
primitive DMFSOAP ocf:sgi:dmfsoap \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="100"
```

Variable	Description
<i>DMFSOAP</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as DMFSOAP

For example:

```
primitive DMFSOAP ocf:sgi:dmfssoap \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="100"
```

The monitor operation probes to see if the resource is already running.

The start operation does the following:

- Starts the DMF client SOAP service by calling the following:

```
service dmfssoap start
```

- Waits for DMF client SOAP service to start successfully by calling the following in a loop:

```
service dmfssoap status
```

- Fails if DMF client SOAP service does not start successfully before the resource times out

The stop operation does the following:

- Stops the DMF client SOAP service by calling the following:

```
service dmfssoap stop
```

- Verifies the DMF client SOAP service status by calling the following:

```
service dmfssoap status
```

- Fails if the DMF client SOAP service does not stop successfully

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

fence_ipmilan STONITH Resource for RHEL

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Test the BMC IP Address Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 143
- "fence_ipmilan STONITH Template Reference" on page 143

Test the BMC IP Address Before Applying an HA Environment

Verify that the IP address for the BMC of the node that this resource will control is accessible, such as by using the `ping(1)` command.

fence_ipmilan STONITH Template Reference

A `fence_ipmilan` resource implements STONITH for one RHEL node in the cluster. It may be used in any HA service for a RHEL cluster.

Note: This resource does not apply to SLES nodes.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/fence_ipmilan
```

Use the following:

```
primitive STONITH-NODE stonith:fence_ipmilan \  
    params pcmk_host_list="NODE" ipaddr="BMC-IP" login="admin" \  
        passwd="admin" delay="DELAY" \  
location STONITH-NODE-LOCATION STONITH-NODE -inf: NODE
```

Variable	Description
<code>STONITH-NODE</code>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>STONITH-node1</code>
<code>NODE</code>	Hostname of the RHEL node that this resource will control, such as <code>node1</code>

<i>BMC-IP</i>	The IP address for the BMC for <i>NODE</i> , such as 128.162.245.197
<i>DELAY</i>	The number of seconds by which the action should be delayed. The nodes must have different values, such as 0 and 15, so that they will not begin the reset process at the same time. This will ensure that both nodes cannot power each other off nearly simultaneously, so that neither is remaining to turn the other back on.
<i>STONITH-NODE-LOCATION</i>	Name of this location instance if you want to use something other than the default

Note: The values shown for the BMC user ID and password are typical, but you must verify the values at your site.

Ensure that the `acpid` service is turned off and will not restart.

For example, for two nodes (`node1` and `node2`):

```
primitive STONITH-node1 stonith:fence_ipmilan \  
    params pcmk_host_list="node1" ipaddr="128.162.245.197" login="admin" \  
        passwd="admin" delay="0"  
primitive STONITH-node2 stonith:fence_ipmilan \  
    params pcmk_host_list="node2" ipaddr="128.162.245.199" login="admin" \  
        passwd="admin" delay="15"  
location STONITH-node1-LOCATION STONITH-node1 -inf: node1  
location STONITH-node2-LOCATION STONITH-node2 -inf: node2
```

The location constraints ensure that the `STONITH-node1` resource will never be located on `node1` and that the `STONITH-node2` resource will never be located on `node2`. This ensures that the power reset is performed via IPMI from another system.

Filesystem Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Local Filesystem Requirements" on page 145
- "Configuring the Filesystem Resource for High Availability" on page 145
- "Filesystem Template Reference" on page 147

Local Filesystem Requirements

For DMF HA purposes, filesystems used by the Filesystem resource should use a filesystem type of `xfst`.

Configuring the Filesystem Resource for High Availability

In a local XVM environment (without CXFS), add Filesystem resources for each of the managed filesystems, DMF administrative filesystems, optional dedicated Openvault server filesystems (and optional Samba configuration directories that will be controlled by HA processes, see "Configure Samba for an HA Environment" on page 200). Do the following:

1. Create another *workfile* that contains the following, where *PREVIOUSLY_ADDED_RESOURCES* are all of the resources added to this point in the procedure and *FILESYSTEM* is one of the filesystems to be controlled by HA processes (use a unique ID for each Filesystem instance):

```
group DMF-GROUP PREVIOUSLY_ADDED_RESOURCES FILESYSTEM
```

2. Copy the primitive from the Filesystem template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "Filesystem Template Reference" on page 147.

Note: The Filesystem resource for Samba requires `fstype="none"`, which differs from the template, and `options="bind"`.

3. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
4. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
5. Save *workfile*.
6. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

7. Test the Filesystem resource:
 - a. Ensure that all of the mount points required to mount all Filesystem resources exist on both nodes.

Note: After a Filesystem primitive has been added to a resource group's configuration, moving that resource group will unmount the filesystem defined in the primitive. This will result in killing any process that has that filesystem in the path of its current working directory.

- b. Verify that the filesystems are online on `node1`:

```
node1# df -hl
```

- c. Move the resource group containing all of the Filesystem resources from `node1` to `node2`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- d. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- e. Verify that the filesystems are correctly mounted on `node2` only:

- On `node2`, check the mount table and verify that the filesystems are mounted and have the correct mount options. Use the `ls` and `df -lh` commands on the mount point to verify that the filesystem is functional.
- On `node1`, check the mount table and verify that none of the filesystems are mounted.

- f. Move the resource group containing all of the Filesystem resources back to `node1`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

g. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

h. Verify that the filesystems are correctly mounted on node1 only:

- On node1, check the mount table and verify that the filesystems are mounted and have the correct mount options. Use the `ls` and `df -lh` commands on the mount point to verify that the filesystem is functional.
- On node2, check the mount table and verify that none of the filesystems are mounted.

i. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

8. Repeat steps 1–7 for each filesystem to be managed by HA in a local XVM environment. Use a unique instance ID for each filesystem.

After you have added all of the filesystems, the DMF-GROUP definition could appear something like the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP LXVM dmfusr1 dmfusr2 home spool move_fs journals \  
    tmp move_fs cache store
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

Filesystem Template Reference

A Filesystem resource implements the mount control for a single filesystem.

Note: The filesystem must not be listed in `/etc/fstab`.

A Filesystem resource is used the following HA services:

- DMF HA service in a local XVM environment for the following:
 - Filesystems managed by DMF
 - DMF administrative filesystems
 - Dedicated filesystem for the OpenVault `serverdir` directory (optional)

- With Samba, for the Samba directories that are bind-mounted on `/etc/samba` and `/var/lib/samba`
- DMF HA service with Samba in a CXFS environment, for the Samba directories that are bind-mounted on `/etc/samba` and `/var/lib/samba`

Note: The Filesystem resources used with Samba require `fstype="none"`, which differs from the template below, and `options="bind"`.

The template is located in:

`/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/Filesystem`

Use the following:

```
primitive FILESYSTEM ocf:heartbeat:Filesystem \
    op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
    op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
    op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
    params device="DEVICE-FILE" directory="MOUNT-POINT" fstype="xfs" \
    options="MOUNT-OPTIONS" \
    meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
FILESYSTEM	Name of this resource instance, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>dmfusrl</code> for a managed filesystem • <code>dmf_spool_fs</code> for the DMF administrative filesystem defined by the <code>SPOOL_DIR</code> parameter in the DMF configuration file • <code>openvaultfs</code> for the filesystem to use as the OpenVault <code>serverdir</code> directory
DEVICE-FILE	The <code>/dev/lxvm</code> volume name of the DMF filesystem device, such as <code>/dev/lxvm/dmfusrl</code> , <code>/dev/lxvm/dmf_spool</code> , or <code>/mnt/data/.ha/etc_samba</code>
MOUNT-POINT	The mount point for the DMF filesystem, such as <code>/dmfusrl</code> , <code>/dmf/dmf_spool</code> , or <code>/etc/samba</code> . This

mount point must already exist on all nodes in the HA cluster before you load this text into the CIB.

MOUNT-OPTIONS

The mount options for the filesystem.

Note: Filesystems that must be mounted with the `dmi` mount option should also have an `mtpt` mount option whose value matches the filesystem's `MOUNT_POINT` value. This includes the `MOVE_FS` filesystem and all filesystems with `filesystem` stanzas (other than those with a `MIGRATION_LEVEL` setting of `archive`) in the DMF configuration file.

The following provide examples of `Filesystem` resources:

- "Filesystem Example for a Managed Filesystem" on page 149
- "Filesystem Example for the Samba Directory bind-Mounted on `/etc/samba`" on page 150

Filesystem Example for a Managed Filesystem

The following examples for a managed filesystem:

```
primitive dmfusrl ocf:heartbeat:Filesystem \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
  params device="/dev/lxvm/dmfusr1" directory="/dmfusrl" fstype="xfs" \
    options="rw" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Mounts the filesystem
- Fails if the mount is unsuccessful

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Unmounts the filesystem
- Fails if the unmount is unsuccessful

Filesystem Example for the Samba Directory bind-Mounted on /etc/samba

The following example is for the Samba directory bind-mounted on /etc/samba:

```
primitive etc-samba ocf:heartbeat:Filesystem \  
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \  
  params device="/mnt/data/.ha/etc-samba" directory="/etc/samba" fstype="none" options="bind\  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The operations and parameters here are similar to the previous example for the managed filesystem, except that this Filesystem resource requires `fstype="none"` and `options="bind"`.

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

IPaddr2 Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "IP Address Alias Requirements" on page 151
- "Configure IP Address Alias for an HA Environment" on page 152
- "IPaddr2 Template" on page 154

IP Address Alias Requirements

You must have the following IP address aliases:

- CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service requires at least one `IPaddr2` resource for each `IPalias` group (in an active-active configuration there are at least two groups).
- DMF HA service (in either a CXFS or a local XVM environment) requires at least one `IPaddr2` resource for the DMF and OpenVault server. You must allocate an IP address alias on the subnet used for DMF and OpenVault communication. The address must be a virtual address managed by an `IPaddr2` resource within the same resource group as the `openvault` resource. You must also add an associated virtual hostname to your local DNS and to the `/etc/hosts` file on all hosts in the cluster that could be used as a DMF server or as an OpenVault client node.

You may need other aliases, depending on your configuration, such as for accessing DMF Manager or serving NFS. However, if DMF and OpenVault are configured to use a dedicated subnet, you should instead define a second `IPaddr2` address on an appropriate subnet for accessing these services. You should define this `IPaddr2` resource in the same resource group as the `dmfman` resource.

See "Configure IP Address Alias for an HA Environment" on page 152.

Configure IP Address Alias for an HA Environment

Do the following to add the IP address alias (IPAddr2) resource:

1. Create another *workfile* that contains the following, where *Previously_Added_Resources* are all of the resources added to this point in the procedure. For example, for the DMF HA example used in this guide:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources IP
```

For more information about the group definition, see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122.

2. Copy the primitive in the IPAddr2 template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "IPAddr2 Template" on page 154.
3. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
4. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
5. Save *workfile*.
6. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

7. Test the IPAddr2 resource:
 - a. Verify that the IP address is configured correctly on node1. For example, for the `ip` value `128.162.244.240`:

```
node1# ip -o addr show | grep '128.162.244.240/'  
4: eth2    inet 128.162.244.240/24 brd 128.162.244.255 scope global secondary eth2
```

- b. Verify that node2 does not accept the IP address packets by running the following command on node2 (there should be no output):

```
node2# ip -o addr show | grep '128.162.244.240/'  
node2#
```

- c. Connect to the virtual address using `ssh` or `telnet` and verify that the IP address is being served by the correct system. For example, for the IP address `128.162.244.240` and the machine named `node1`:

```
remote# ssh root@128.162.244.240  
Last login: Mon Jul 14 10:34:58 2008 from mynode.mycompany.com
```

```
remote# uname -n  
node1
```

- d. Move the resource group containing the IPAddr2 resource from node1 to node2:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- e. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- f. Verify that the IP address is configured correctly on node2:

```
node2# ip -o addr show | grep '128.162.244.240/'  
4: eth2    inet 128.162.244.240/24 brd 128.162.244.255 scope global secondary eth2
```

- g. Verify that node1 does not accept the IP address packets by running the following command on node1 (there should be no output):

```
node1# ip -o addr show | grep '128.162.244.240/'  
node1#
```

- h. Connect to the virtual address using ssh or telnet and verify that the IP address is being served by the correct system. For example, for the IP address 128.162.244.240 and the machine named node2:

```
ha# ssh root@128.162.244.240  
Last login: Mon Jul 14 10:34:58 2008 from mynode.mycompany.com  
ha# uname -n  
node2
```

- i. Move the resource group containing the IPAddr2 resource back to node1:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- j. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- k. Test again as in steps a-c above.

- l. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see:

- "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61
- "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45
- "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45

IPaddr2 Template

An `IPaddr2` resource controls the addition/deletion of an IP address alias on a network interface. It is used in the CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service and in the DMF HA service (in either a CXFS environment or a local XVM environment).

Use the following:

```
primitive IP ocf:heartbeat:IPaddr2 \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="30s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="90s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="100s" on-fail="fence" \  
  params ip="IP-ADDRESS" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable

Description

<i>IP</i>	Name of this resource instance, which must match the named used to define it in the associated <code>group</code> resource (for example, <code>IP</code> used DMF HA example in this guide or <code>IP-1</code> or <code>IP-2</code> used in the CXFS NFS edge-serving example in this guide).
<i>IP-ADDRESS</i>	IP address of the virtual channel, such as 128.162.244.240

For example:

```
primitive IP-1 ocf:heartbeat:IPaddr2 \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="30s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="90s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="100s" on-fail="fence" \  
  params ip="128.162.244.240" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running. Normally, this is the only `monitor` operation required for an `IPaddr2` resource.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Establishes the IP address alias
- Fails if the IP address alias is not established

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Removes the IP address alias
- Fails if the IP address alias is not removed

To add more resources, see:

- "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61
- "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45
- "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45

ipalias-group Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "No Preliminary Testing Required" on page 157
- "ipalias-group Template" on page 157

No Preliminary Testing Required

The group itself does not require any preliminary testing before applying HA.

ipalias-group Template

A group resource named `IPALIAS-GROUP` controls the `IPAddr2` and `cxfs-client-smnotify` resources. It is used in a CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service. You will have a pair of `IPALIAS-GROUP` resources, each with their own set of `colocation` and `order` constraints.

Use the following:

```
group IPALIAS-GROUP-X IP-X SMNOTIFY-X \
    meta target-role="Stopped"
colocation IPALIAS-WITH-NFS-X inf: IPALIAS-GROUP-X CXFS-NFS-CLONE
order NFS-BEFORE-IPALIAS-X inf: CXFS-NFS-CLONE IPALIAS-GROUP-X
```

Variable	Description
<i>IPALIAS-GROUP-X</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>IPALIAS-GROUP-1</code>
<i>IP-X</i>	Name of the <code>IPAddr2</code> resource instance (see "IPAddr2 Template" on page 154), such as <code>IP-1</code>
<i>SMNOTIFY-X</i>	Name of the <code>cxfs-client-smnotify</code> resource instance (see "cxfs-client-smnotify

<i>IPALIAS-WITH-NFS-X</i>	Template Reference" on page 113), such as SMNOTIFY-1
<i>CXFS-NFS-CLONE</i>	Name of this colocation constraint, such as IPALIAS-WITH-NFS-1
<i>NFS-BEFORE-IPALIAS-X</i>	Name of the NFS clone (see "cxfs-nfs-clone Template Reference" on page 117) such as CXFS-NFS-CLONE
	Name of this order constraint, such as NFS-BEFORE-IPALIAS-1

For example:

- For the first group:

```
group IPALIAS-GROUP-1 IP-1 SMNOTIFY-1 \  
  meta target-role="Stopped"  
  colocation IPALIAS-WITH-NFS-1 inf: IPALIAS-GROUP-1 CXFS-NFS-CLONE  
  order NFS-BEFORE-IPALIAS-1 inf: CXFS-NFS-CLONE IPALIAS-GROUP-1
```

- For the second group:

```
group IPALIAS-GROUP-2 IP-2 SMNOTIFY-2 \  
  meta target-role="Stopped"  
  colocation IPALIAS-WITH-NFS-2 inf: IPALIAS-GROUP-2 CXFS-NFS-CLONE  
  order NFS-BEFORE-IPALIAS-2 inf: CXFS-NFS-CLONE IPALIAS-GROUP-2
```

The colocation and order constraints ensure that IPALIAS-GROUP-1 will only run on a server that is also running a CXFS-NFS-CLONE instance, and the clone instance will be started first.

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 45.

ipmi STONITH Resource for SLES

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Test the BMC IP Address Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 159
- "ipmi Template Reference" on page 159

Test the BMC IP Address Before Applying an HA Environment

Verify that the IP address for the BMC of the node that this resource will control is accessible, such as by using the `ping(1)` command.

ipmi Template Reference

An `ipmi` resource implements STONITH for one SLES node in the cluster.

Note: This resource does not apply to RHEL nodes.

This template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/ipmi
```

Use the following:

```
primitive STONITH-NODE stonith:external/ipmi \  
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
    op monitor interval="300s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
    op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
    params hostname="NODE" ipaddr="BMC-IP" userid="admin" \  
    passwd="admin" interface="lan"
```

```
location STONITH-NODE-LOCATION STONITH-NODE -inf: NODE
```

Variable	Description
----------	-------------

<code>STONITH-NODE</code>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>STONITH-node1</code>
---------------------------	--

<i>NODE</i>	Name of the node that this resource will control, such as <code>node1</code>
<i>BMC-IP</i>	The IP address for the BMC of the node this resource will control, such as <code>128.162.232.79</code> .
<i>STONITH-NODE-LOCATION</i>	Name of the location constraint if you want to use something other than the default

Note: You should verify that BMC `userid`, `passwd`, and `interface` values are correct for your site. (The BMC hardware at some sites may require the `lanplus` value for `interface`.)

For example:

```
primitive STONITH-node1 stonith:external/ipmi \  
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
    op monitor interval="300s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
    op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
    params hostname="node1" ipaddr="128.162.232.79" userid="admin" \  
        passwd="admin" interface="lan" \  
primitive STONITH-node2 stonith:external/ipmi \  
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
    op monitor interval="300s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
    op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
    params hostname="node1" ipaddr="128.162.246.63" userid="admin" \  
        passwd="admin" interface="lan" \  
location STONITH-node1-LOCATION STONITH-node1 -inf: node1 \  
location STONITH-node2-LOCATION STONITH-node2 -inf: node2
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Initializes the information required for the `stonithd` daemon to act when necessary
- Fails if the information cannot be initialized

The `location` constraint ensures that the `STONITH-node1` resource will never be located on `node1`. This ensures that the power reset is performed via IPMI from some other system.

ping Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Test the IP Addresses Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 163
- "ping Template Reference" on page 163

Test the IP Addresses Before Applying an HA Environment

Before applying an HA environment, ensure that the IP addresses you want to include are valid and accessible with the `ping(1)` command.

ping Template Reference

The HA software calculates a score for each node that determines where resources will run. A `ping` resource further influences the node on which a given resource will run. It may be used in any HA service.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/ping
```

Use the following cloned resource:

```
primitive PING ocf:pacemaker:ping \  
    op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
    op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
    op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
    params name="PINGSCORE" multiplier="NNNN" debug="true" \  
    host_list="IP-PING-LIST" \  
clone PING-CLONE PING
```

The above creates an attribute called `PINGSCORE` on both nodes (because the `PING` resource is cloned). The value of the `PINGSCORE` attribute will be calculated as the number of IP addresses (from `IP-PING-LIST`) successfully pinged from that node times the `NNNN` multiplier.

To implement a connectivity influence constraint on *RESOURCE* in which the node that can successfully contact the most IP addresses in *IP-PING-LIST* will be chosen (assuming that all other elements of the cumulative node scores for *RESOURCE* are equal), use the following:

```
location BEST-LOCATION RESOURCE \
    rule PINGSCORE: defined PINGSCORE
```

This adds the value of *PINGSCORE* on each node to that node’s overall score for *RESOURCE*, if the *PINGSCORE* attribute is defined (that is, the *PING* resource is running on the node).

To implement a connectivity influence constraint on *RESOURCE* that requires a node to meet a minimum-connectivity requirement in order to be eligible to run the *RESOURCE*, use the following constraint:

```
location THRESHOLD-LOCATION RESOURCE \
    rule -inf: not_defined PINGSCORE or PINGSCORE lt THRESHOLD-VALUE
```

This sets the node score for *RESOURCE* to *-INFINITY* if either the *PINGSCORE* attribute is not defined for a node (that is, the *PING* resource is not running on the node) or the value of *PINGSCORE* is less than the defined *THRESHOLD-VALUE* on that node.

Variable	Description
<i>PING</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>PING</code> .
<i>IP-PING-LIST</i>	Comma-separated list of IP addresses on which to execute <code>ping</code> , such as: 28.162.246.63,128.162.246.61,128.162.232.79
<i>PINGSCORE</i>	Name of the attribute (such as <code>PINGSCORE</code>) that will consist of a value computed by the <code>ping</code> resource agent.

Note: Because the *PING* resource is cloned, all nodes in the cluster will use the same attribute. On each node, the value of the attribute is calculated by the `ping` resource agent for the *PINGSCORE* parameter will be computed as the number of IP addresses (from the *IP-PING-LIST*) that were successfully accessed via the `ping` command multiplied by the *NNNN* value.

<i>NNNN</i>	The arbitrary value, such as 1000, by which the number of the IP addresses from <i>IP-PING-LIST</i> which were successfully reached via ping will be multiplied.
<i>PING-CLONE</i>	Name of the clone instance
<i>BEST-LOCATION</i>	Name of the location constraint
<i>THRESHOLD-LOCATION</i>	Name of the location constraint
<i>RESOURCE</i>	Resource to be influenced, such as DMF-GROUP (see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122)
<i>THRESHOLD-VALUE</i>	The minimum number of IP addresses that <i>RESOURCE</i> must be able to ping, multiplied by the <i>NNNN</i> multiplier value

For example, suppose that you want to ensure that a node running the DMF-GROUP is always able to successfully ping at least two of the IP addresses in *IP-PING-LIST*; using an *NNNN* multiplier value of 1000, the *THRESHOLD-VALUE* would be 2000. You could use the following:

```
primitive PING ocf:pacemaker:ping \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  params name="PINGSCORE" multiplier="1000" debug="true" \
  host_list="128.162.246.63,128.162.246.61,128.162.232.79"
clone PING-CLONE PING
location THRESHOLD-LOCATION DMF-GROUP \
  rule -inf: not_defined PINGSCORE or PINGSCORE lt 2000
```


1xvm Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Local XVM Requirements" on page 167
- "Test Local XVM Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 167
- "Configure Local XVM for an HA Environment" on page 168
- "1xvm Template Reference" on page 170

Local XVM Requirements

All local XVM volumes that are managed by HA software must have unique `volname` values.

All local XVM physical volumes (*physvols*) that are managed by HA software must have unique `Disk Name` values in their XVM label when compared to all other XVM volumes on the SAN. For example, you cannot have two `physvols` on the same SAN with the `Disk Name` of `spool`, even if one is foreign.

If you do not have unique values, the following are potential problems:

- High-availability software may steal the wrong `physvol` from a system outside of the cluster while I/O is ongoing. This may result in losing data from that system while corrupting the filesystem from the node within the cluster by whom it is stolen.
- General confusion, resulting in node reset.

Test Local XVM Before Applying an HA Environment

According to the instructions in the *XVM Volume Manager Administrator Guide*, do the following on `node1` for each of the local XVM filesystems that you want to make highly available:

1. Configure the filesystem. Make a note of the name of each `physvol` that is part of each volume and save it for later.

2. Construct the filesystem using `mkfs`.
3. Mount the filesystem.

To test the local XVM non-HA service, ensure that you can create and delete files in each of the mounted filesystems.

Configure Local XVM for an HA Environment

Do the following:

1. Make sure that none of the filesystems to be controlled are mounted on either node.
2. Make sure that none of the filesystems to be controlled are present in `/etc/fstab` on either node.
3. Make sure that the local XVM volumes are visible and online on `node1`.
4. Create a new partial configuration file (*workfile*) that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP LXVM
```
5. Copy the `primitive` text from the `lxvm` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "lxvm Template Reference" on page 170.
6. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
7. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
8. Save *workfile*.
9. Update the database:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

Note: As a best practice, you should also run the following command to verify changes you make to the CIB:

```
node1# crm_verify -LV
```

For simplicity, this step is not included in the following procedures but is recommended. For more information, see "Use the `crm_verify` Command to Verify Configuration" on page 24.

10. Test the resource:

- a. Move the resource group containing the `lxvm` resource from `node1` to `node2`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- b. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

Note: If the timeout is too short for a start operation, the `crm status` and `crm_verify -LV` output and the log files will have an entry that refers to the action being "Timed Out" (see "Examine Log Files" on page 24). For example (line breaks shown here for readability):

```
node1# crm status | grep Timed  
lxvm_start_0 (node=node1, call=222, rc=-2): Timed Out
```

```
node1# crm_verify -LV 2>&1 | grep Timed  
crm_verify[147386]: 2008/07/23_14:36:34 WARN: unpack_rsc_op:  
Processing failed op lxvm_start_0 on node1: Timed Out
```

- c. Move the resource group containing the `lxvm` resource back to `node1`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- d. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- e. Verify that the local XVM volumes are visible and online on `node1`:

```
node1# xvm -d local show vol
```

- f. Remove the implicit location constraints generated by the administrative move command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

lxvm Template Reference

An `lxvm` resource implements node ownership control for local XVM volumes. It is used in a DMF HA service.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/lxvm
```

Use the following:

```
primitive LXVM ocf:sgi:lxvm \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="180s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="180s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="900s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="900s" on-fail="fence" \
  params physvols="PHYSVOL-LIST" volnames="VOLUME-LIST" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<code>LXVM</code>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>LXVM</code>
<code>PHYSVOL-LIST</code>	Comma-separated list of the physical volumes for the resource agent to steal, such as: <code>myCluster,myClusterStripe1,myClusterStripe2</code>

Note: `PHYSVOL-LIST` must contain all of the physical volumes for every logical volume listed in `VOLUME-LIST`. All physical disks that belong to a logical volume in an HA cluster must be completely dedicated to that logical volume and no other.

VOLUME-LIST

Comma-separated list of volume names under /dev/lxvm to monitor, such as:

```
openvault,home,journals,spool,move,tmp,diskmsp,dmfusr1,dmfusr2
```

Note: A 900-second start timeout should be sufficient in most cases, but sites with large disk configurations may need to adjust this value. You should usually use the same timeout value for start and stop.

For example:

```
primitive LXVM ocf:sgi:lxvm \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="180s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="180s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="900s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="900s" on-fail="fence" \
  params physvols="myCluster,myClusterStripe1,myClusterStripe2" volnames="openvault,home,\
    journals,spool,move,tmp,diskmsp,dmfusr1,dmfusr2" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first monitor operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The start operation does the following:

- Steals all physical volumes in *PHYSVOL-LIST* that are not already owned by the local system
- Verifies that all volumes in *VOLUME-LIST* are online
- Probes paths for all local XVM devices
- Switches to preferred paths for all local XVM devices
- Fails if any volume in *VOLUME-LIST* does not come online

The stop operation does the following:

- Gives all physical volumes in *PHYSVOL-LIST* to a pseudo-cluster whose ID is of the form *OCF-host-pid*, which allows the *lxvm* resource agent to identify the filesystems that it must steal when it becomes active
- Fails if any physical volume in *PHYSVOL-LIST* could not be given away

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

MailTo Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Test the Email Addresses Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 173
- "MailTo Template Reference" on page 173

Test the Email Addresses Before Applying an HA Environment

Before applying an HA environment, ensure that the email addresses are valid.

MailTo Template Reference

A MailTo resource implements failover notification for a given resource. It may be used in any HA service. A message is sent whenever the specified resource starts or stops.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/MailTo
```

Use the following:

```
primitive NOTIFY ocf:heartbeat:MailTo \  
    params email="EMAIL-ADDRESS" subject="RESOURCE-TO-TRACK" \  
colocation NOTIFIER inf: RESOURCE-TO-TRACK NOTIFY
```

Variable	Description
NOTIFY	Name of this resource instance, such as NOTIFY
EMAIL-ADDRESS	The address to be sent notifications
RESOURCE-TO-TRACK	Name of the resource to be tracked, which may be an individual resource such as dmf or a group resource such as DMF-GROUP (see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122)

NOTIFIER Name of the colocation constraint, such as
NOTIFIER

For example:

```
primitive NOTIFY ocf:heartbeat:MailTo \  
    params email="admin@mycompany.com" subject="DMF-GROUP"  
colocation NOTIFIER inf: DMF-GROUP NOTIFY
```

nfsserver Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Test the NFS Service for DMF Use Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 175
- "Stop the NFS Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 177
- "Configure NFS for an HA Environment" on page 177
- "nfsserver Template Reference" on page 180

Test the NFS Service for DMF Use Before Applying an HA Environment

Set up the NFS exports in the `/etc/exports` file on both CXFS nodes as you would normally. The `/etc/exports` file should be identical on both nodes.

Note: Be sure to include the `fsid=uniquenumber` export option in order to prevent stale file handles after failover.

To test the NFS non-HA service, do the following:

1. Ensure that the node is a member of the CXFS cluster and has filesystems mounted. For example:

```
node1# /usr/cluster/bin/clconf_info
node1# df
```

2. Ensure that the NFS service is running on the CXFS metadata server:

- RHEL:

```
rhel# service nfs status
```

If it is not running, start it:

```
rhel# service nfs start
```

- SLES:

```
sles# service nfsserver status
```

If it is not running, start it:

```
sles# service nfsserver start
```

3. Export the filesystem from node1:

- a. Configure `/etc/exports`.
- b. Export the CXFS filesystems:

```
node1# exportfs -a
```

- c. Run the following command on node1 to verify that the filesystems are exported:

```
node1# exportfs -v  
/nfsexportedfilesystem <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=xxx)
```

4. NFS-mount and test the filesystem from node1:

- a. Mount the filesystems on a node that will not be a member of the HA cluster (otherhost):

- NFS v3:

```
otherhost# mount -t nfs -o vers=3 node1:/nfsexportedfilesystem /mnt/test
```

- NFS v4:

```
otherhost# mount -t nfs -o vers=4 node1:/nfsexportedfilesystem /mnt/test
```

- b. Read and write to the NFS-mounted filesystems:

```
otherhost# echo "test data for a test file" > /mnt/test/testFile1A  
otherhost# cat /mnt/test/testFile1A  
test data for a test file
```

5. Repeat steps 3 and 4, exporting and then mounting the filesystem from node2.

Stop the NFS Service Before Applying an HA Environment

Using NFS with HA software requires the following:

- On all HA nodes during HA operation, disable the NFS service from being started automatically at boot time, according to the operating system:

– RHEL:

```
rhel_node1# chkconfig nfs off
rhel_node1# service nfs stop
```

```
rhel_node2# chkconfig nfs off
rhel_node2# service nfs stop
```

– SLES:

```
sles_node1# chkconfig nfsserver off
sles_node1# service nfsserver stop
```

```
sles_node2# chkconfig nfsserver off
sles_node2# service nfsserver stop
```

The HA software will control the service.

Configure NFS for an HA Environment

To configure NFS for an HA environment, do the following:

1. Copy the `/etc/exports` entries that you would like to make highly available from `node1` to the `/etc/exports` file on `node2`.

Note: Be sure to include the `fsid=uniquenumber` export option in order to prevent stale file handles after failover.

2. (*RHEL only*) On both RHEL nodes, do the following:
 - a. Set the following in the `/etc/sysconfig/nfs` file:

```
START_SMNOTIFY="no"
```

b. Ensure that NFS lock services are started at boot time:

- On RHEL node1:

```
node1# chkconfig nfslock on
```

- On RHEL node2:

```
node2# chkconfig nfslock on
```

3. Create another *workfile* that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources NFS
```

For more information about the group definition, see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122.

4. Copy the primitive in the *nfsserver* template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "nfsserver Template Reference" on page 180.

5. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.

6. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.

7. Save *workfile*.

8. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

9. Test the new resource:

a. Run the following command on node1 to verify that the NFS filesystems are exported:

```
node1# exportfs -v
/work.mynode1 <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8001)
/work.mynode2 <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8002)
/work.mynode3 <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8003)
/work.mynode4 <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8004)
/mirrors <world>(ro,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8005)
/ <world>(ro,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8006)
```

- b. Mount the filesystems on a node that will not be a member of the HA cluster (otherhost):

```
otherhost# mount node1:/nfsexportedfilesystem /mnt/test
```

- c. Read and write to the NFS-mounted filesystems:

```
otherhost# echo "test data" > /mnt/test/testFile1A
otherhost# cat /mnt/test/testFile1A
test data
```

- d. Move the resource group containing the nfsserver resource from node1 to node2:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- e. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- f. Run the following command on node2 to verify that the NFS filesystems are exported:

```
node2# exportfs -v
/work.mynode1 <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8001)
/work.mynode2 <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8002)
/work.mynode3 <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8003)
/work.mynode4 <world>(rw,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8004)
/mirrors <world>(ro,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8005)
/ <world>(ro,wdelay,root_squash,no_subtree_check,fsid=8006)
```

- g. Read and write to the NFS-mounted filesystems:

```
otherhost# echo "more test data" > /mnt/test/testFile1B
otherhost# cat /mnt/test/testFile1B
more test data
```

- h. Move the resource group containing the nfsserver resource back to node1:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- i. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- j. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative `move` command executed above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

nfsserver Template Reference

An `nfsserver` resource controls the start/stop of NFS. It may be used in a DMF HA service.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/nfsserver
```

Use the following:

```
primitive NFS ocf:heartbeat:nfsserver \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
  params nfs_shared_infodir="STATEDIR" nfs_ip="IP ADDRESS-ALIAS" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<i>NFS</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>NFS</code> .
<i>STATEDIR</i>	Directory in the NFS filesystem that will be used to store NFS file-lock state for this HA cluster, such as the <code>/mnt/cxfsvol1/.nfs</code> subdirectory in the exported filesystem.
<i>IP ADDRESS-ALIAS</i>	IP address alias associated with the NFS client lock state (which is reclaimed by the NFS client from the NFS server when it receives the NSM reboot notification that is initiated by this <code>nfsserver</code> resource), for example <code>128.162.244.244</code> . This IP address alias will be the same IP address specified for

IP-ADDRESS in one of the `IPAddr2` resources (see "IPAddr2 Template" on page 154).

For example:

```
primitive NFS ocf:heartbeat:nfsserver \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="120s" on-fail="fence" \
  params nfs_shared_infodir="/mnt/cxfsvoll/.nfs" nfs_ip="128.162.232.79" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Starts the NFS server:
 - RHEL:


```
service nfs start
```
 - SLES:


```
service nfsserver start
```
- Notifies clients by calling the `nfs_notify_cmd` command
- Fails if the NFS server does not start

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Stops the NFS server:
 - RHEL:


```
service nfs stop
```
 - SLES:


```
service nfsserver stop
```
- Fails if the NFS server does not stop

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

openvault Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "OpenVault Requirements" on page 183
- "Test OpenVault Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 184
- "Configure OpenVault for an HA Environment" on page 186
- "openvault Template Reference" on page 195

OpenVault Requirements

To use OpenVault as the mounting service, you must do the following:

- If upgrading to an entirely new root filesystem, as would be required if upgrading from a SLES 10 system, you should create a copy of the OpenVault configuration directory (`/var/opt/openvault`) from the old root before upgrading the OS. You can then reinstall it on the new root so that you do not need to entirely reconfigure OpenVault. See the section about taking appropriate steps when upgrading DMF in the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.
- Provide a directory for OpenVault's use within an HA filesystem in the DMF resource group. This is known as the *serverdir directory*. The directory will hold OpenVault's database and logs. The directory can be either of the following:
 - Within the root of an HA filesystem dedicated to OpenVault use
 - Within another HA filesystem, such as the filesystem specified by the `HOME_DIR` parameter in the DMF configuration file

In non-HA environments, the OpenVault server's files reside in `/var/opt/openvault/server`. During the conversion to an HA environment, OpenVault will move its databases and logs into the specified directory within an HA filesystem and change `/var/opt/openvault/server` to be a symbolic link to that directory.

- Ensure that you **do not** have the `OV_SERVER` parameter set in the base object of the DMF configuration file, because in an HA environment the OpenVault server must be the same machine as the DMF server.

- Configure the DMF application instances in OpenVault to use a wildcard ("*") for the hostname and instance name. For more information, see the chapter about mounting service configuration tasks in the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*.
- On all HA nodes during HA operation, disable the `openvault` service from being started automatically at boot time:

See also "IP Address Alias Requirements" on page 151.

Test OpenVault Before Applying an HA Environment

Configure OpenVault on `node1`, according to the instructions in the *OpenVault Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage* and, if using the Parallel Data-Mover Option, the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*. This means that you will use the **actual** hostname as reported by the `hostname(1)` command when using `ov_admin`. For the potential DMF servers and any parallel data-mover nodes, configure OpenVault library control programs (LCPs) and drive control programs (DCPs) for all local libraries and drives.

Note: Configuration of OpenVault on the alternate DMF server (`node2`) will be done when the conversion to an HA environment is performed.

To test the OpenVault non-HA service, verify that you can perform operational tasks documented in the OpenVault guide, such as mounting and unmounting of cartridges using the `ov_mount` and `ov_unmount` commands.

For example, in an OpenVault configuration using tapes with two drives (`drive0` and `drive1`) where you have configured a volume named `DMF105` for use by DMF, the following sequence of commands will verify that drive `drive0` and the library are working correctly:

```
node1# ov_mount -A dmf -V DMF105 -d drive0
Mounted DMF105 on /var/opt/openvault/clients/handles/An96H0uA3xr0
node1# tsmt status
  Controller: SCSI
  Device: SONY: SDZ-130          0202
  Status: 0x20262
  Drive type: Sony SAIT
  Media : READY, writable, at BOT
node1# ov_stat -d | grep DMF105
drive0          drives      true  false false  inuse   loaded  ready   true    DMF105S1
node1# ov_unmount -A dmf -V DMF105 -d drive0
Unmounted DMF105
node1# exit
```

Repeat the sequence for `drive1`.

Note: The `tsmt` step is only useful when using tapes.

Stop the `openvault` Service Before Applying an HA Environment

To use the `openvault` resource, you must stop the `openvault` service on each node before applying HA:

```
node1# chkconfig openvault off
node1# service openvault stop
```

```
node2# chkconfig openvault off
node2# service openvault stop
```

The HA software will control this service.

Configure OpenVault for an HA Environment

Do the following to configure OpenVault for an HA environment:

1. Ensure that all of the resources within the resource group are moved back to `node1` (if not already there).
2. Create another *workfile* that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources OV
```

For more information about the group definition, see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122.

3. Copy the primitive in the `openvault` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "openvault Template Reference" on page 195.
4. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
5. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
6. Save *workfile*.
7. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

8. Run `ov_admin` on `node1`:

```
node1# ov_admin  
...
```

Verify that the server hostname matches the `virtualhost` value from *workfile* in step 3 above.

9. Exit `ov_admin`.

Note: From here forward, whenever `ov_admin` asks for the server hostname, you must use *virtualhostvalue*.

10. Verify that the DCPs and LCPs are running on `node1` by using the `ov_stat(8)` command with the `-ld` options, which should show `ready` in the LCP State and DCP State fields (output condensed here for readability):

```
node1# ov_stat -ld
Library Name  Broken ...  LCP State
lib1          false ...  ready

Drive Name    Group ...      DCP State  Occupied   Cartridge PCL
tape1         drives ...     ready      false
tape2         drives ...     ready      false
```

11. Enable the passive server (`node2`) as a potential OpenVault server:

- a. On `node1`:

To allow `node2` to access the OpenVault server, run `ov_admin` and select the step to activate a client machine:

```
node1# ov_admin
...
22 - Manage OpenVault Client Machines
    1 - Activate an OpenVault Client Machine
```

Answer the questions as following, optionally supplying a security key:

```
Which Client Machine do you want to activate? [] node2
What security key would you like the Client Machine node2 to use? [none] mykey
Will DCPs and/or LCPs also be configured to run on "node2"? [Yes] yes
```

Note: If you originally entered the server name when activating the `dmf` application instances on `node1` (rather than the wildcard `*` character, which allows the `dmf` application to be used from any host, as suggested in the *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*), you must also create a privileged and an unprivileged `dmf` application instance for `node2`.

- b. On `node2`, use `ov_admin` to enable the node to issue administrative commands by using `virtualhostvalue` (the default) entering `mykey` if you specified the key in step 11a:

```
node2# ov_admin
...
```

```
Name where the OpenVault server is listening? [virtualhostvalue]
What port number is the OpenVault server on virtualhostvalue using? [695]
What security key would you like the admin commands to use? [none] mykey
```

- c. If node2 is connected to the same physical or virtual tape library as node1, go to step 12. If not, exit `ov_admin` and go to step 13.

12. Define DCPs and LCPs on the passive node (node2).

Note: If your site contains COPAN native MAID shelves, you will create their OpenVault components later in "Create the OpenVault Components on the Passive Node" on page 84. Therefore, you can skip this step if your site contains only COPAN native MAID shelves (and no physical tape library or COPAN VTL).

a. Configure drives by selecting:

```
2 - Manage DCPs for locally attached Drives
...
1 - Create a new SCSI DCP
```

You must specify the drive for which would you like to add a DCP and the DCP name.

On node2, you must configure at least one DCP for each drive that is already configured on node1.

b. Configure libraries by selecting:

```
1 - Manage LCPs for locally attached Libraries
```

On node2, you must configure at least one LCP for each library that is already configured on node1:

- When asked for the name of the device, use the same library name that was used on node1. The LCP instance name will automatically reflect the node2 name (for example, for the 1700a library, the LCP instance name on node1 is 1700a@node1 and the LCP instance name on node2 will be 1700a@node2).
- When prompted with Library 'libname' already exists in OpenVault catalog; create LCP anyway?, respond yes.

- When prompted for the drive name at a given element address, enter the drive name that corresponds to the `ov_dumptable(8)` DRIVE output for the serial number provided:

```
For the drive at location "drive 0 VENDOR='' PRODUCT='' SERIAL='80300189-D00'
Enter a drive name for the element address "256":
```

For example, for 80300189-D00 you would enter C00d00, given the following output:

```
node2# ov_dumptable -c DriveName,DriveSerialNumber DRIVE
DriveName DriveSerialNumber
C00d00      80300189-D00
C00d01      80300189-D01
C00d02      80300189-D02
C00d03      80300189-D03
```

All DCPs and LCPs have now been configured and started on node2.

- c. On node1:
 - i. Verify that the DCPs are running successfully. For example, the following output shows under DCPHost and DCPStateSoft columns that the DCP is running and connected to the OpenVault server (ready) on the active HA node (node1) and running in disconnected mode (disconnected) on the passive node (node2):

```
node1# ov_dumptable -c DriveName,DCPName,DCPHost,DCPStateSoft DCP
DriveName DCPName          DCPHost DCPStateSoft
9940B_25a1 9940B_25a1@node1 node1    ready
9940B_b7ba 9940B_b7ba@node1 node1    ready
9940B_93c8 9940B_93c8@node1 node1    ready
LTO2_682f  LTO2_682f@node1  node1    ready
LTO2_6832  LTO2_6832@node1  node1    ready
LTO2_6835  LTO2_6835@node1  node1    ready
LTO2_6838  LTO2_6838@node1  node1    ready
9940B_25a1 9940B_25a1@node2 node2    disconnected
9940B_93c8 9940B_93c8@node2 node2    disconnected
9940B_b7ba 9940B_b7ba@node2 node2    disconnected
LTO2_682f  LTO2_682f@node2  node2    disconnected
LTO2_6832  LTO2_6832@node2  node2    disconnected
LTO2_6838  LTO2_6838@node2  node2    disconnected
LTO2_6835  LTO2_6835@node2  node2    disconnected
```

Note: All of the alternate DCPs should transition to `disconnected` state, meaning that they have successfully contacted the server. Do not proceed until they all transition to `disconnected`. A state of `inactive` means that the DCP has not contacted the server, so if the state remains `inactive` for more than a few minutes, the DCP may be having problems connecting to the server.

- ii. Verify that the LCPs are running. For example, the following output shows under `LCPHost` and `LCPStateSoft` columns that the LCP is running and connected to the OpenVault server (`ready`) on the active HA node (`node1`) and running in disconnected mode (`disconnected`) on the passive node (`node2`):

```
node1# ov_dumptable -c LibraryName,LCPName,LCPHost,LCPStateSoft LCP
LibraryName LCPName      LCPHost LCPStateSoft
SL500-2     SL500-2@node1 node1    ready
L700A      L700A@node1  node1    ready
SL500-2     SL500-2@node2 node2    disconnected
L700A      L700A@node2  node2    disconnected
```

Note: It may take a minute or two for the LCPs to notice that they are able to connect to the server and activate themselves. All of the alternate LCPs should transition to `disconnected` state, meaning that they have successfully contacted the server. Do not proceed until they all transition to `disconnected`. A state of `inactive` means that the LCP has not contacted the server, so if the state remains `inactive` for more than a couple of minutes, the LCP may be having problems connecting to the server.

- d. Exit `ov_admin`.

13. Stop all DCPs and LCPs on node2:

```
node2# ov_stop
```

14. Run `ov_admin` on each parallel data-mover node:

- a. Enter *virtualhostvalue* and the port number (and security key *mykey*, if needed):

```
mover# ov_admin
```

```
...
```

```
Name where the OpenVault server is listening? [servername] virtualhostvalue
```

```
What port number is the OpenVault server on virtualhostvalue using? [695]
```

```
What security key would you like the admin commands to use? [none] mykey
```

- b. Update the server name for each DCP using item 6 in the OpenVault DCP Configuration menu:

```
2 - Manage DCPs for locally attached Drives
```

```
6 - Change Server Used by DCPs
```

```
a - Change server for all DCPs.
```

- c. In the rare case that the parallel data-mover node has LCPs for something other than a COPAN MAID shelf, you must individually update the server used for each LCP by using item 8 in the OpenVault LCP Configuration menu:

```
1 - Manage LCPs for locally attached Libraries
```

```
8 - Change Server Used by LCPs
```

For each LCP that does not apply to COPAN MAID, iteratively select its option and change its server. (Repeat individually for each LCP.)

Note: Do not select the option to change the server used by all LCPs if there are any COPAN MAID shelf LCPs defined.

- d. Restart the OpenVault client components (DCPs and any LCPs) to connect to the OpenVault server using the virtual server name:

```
mover# service openvault stop
```

```
mover# service openvault start
```

This step may generate errors for COPAN MAID shelf DCPs and LCPs whose default host is not on this host. You can ignore errors such as the following:

```
shelf C00 is owned by owner_nodename
```

15. On node1, stop the OpenVault server and any DCPs and LCPs:

```
node1# ov_stop
```

16. Update the openvault resource so that it is managed by HA software:

```
node1# crm resource manage OV
```

The conversion is now complete. (This action changes the `is-managed` attribute for the `openvault` primitive to `true`.)

17. *(Optional)* If you want to have additional OpenVault clients that are not DMF servers, such as for running administrative commands, install the OpenVault software on those clients and run `ov_admin` as shown below. When asked the server hostname, specify the `virtualhost` value from the workfile in step 3 above.

Note: You may wish to set the environment variable `OVSERVER` to the virtual hostname so that you can use the OpenVault administrative commands without having to specify the `-S` parameter on each command.

Do the following for each OpenVault client:

- a. On node1:

To allow node2 to act as an administrative client, run `ov_admin` and select the following menus, answering the questions when prompted:

```
node1# ov_admin
...
22 - Manage OpenVault Client Machines
    1 - Activate an OpenVault Client Machine
```

- b. On the OpenVault client node, use `ov_admin` to enable the node to issue administrative commands by entering the `virtualhost` value in *workfile*, the port number, and security key as needed:

```
node2# ov_admin
...
Name where the OpenVault server is listening? [virtualhostvalue]
What port number is the OpenVault server on virtualhostvalue using? [695]
What security key is used for admin commands on the HA OpenVault servers? [none]
```

18. Test the new resource:

- a. Verify that all of the OpenVault libraries and drives become available after a few minutes on node1:

```
node1# ov_stat -ld
```

Library Name	Broken	Disabled	State	LCP State
L700A	false	false	ready	ready
SL500-2	false	false	ready	ready

Drive Name	Group	Access	Broken	Disabled	SoftState	HardState	DCP State	Occupied	Cartridge	PCL
9940B_25a1	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
9940B_93c8	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
9940B_b7ba	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LT02_682f	LT02_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LT02_6832	LT02_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LT02_6835	LT02_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LT02_6838	LT02_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		

- b. Move the resource group containing the openvault resource from node1 to node2:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- c. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- d. Verify that all of the drives become available after a few moments. For example:

```
node2# ov_stat -ld
```

Library Name	Broken	Disabled	State	LCP State
L700A	false	false	ready	ready
SL500-2	false	false	ready	ready

Drive Name	Group	Access	Broken	Disabled	SoftState	HardState	DCP State	Occupied	Cartridge	PCL
9940B_25a1	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
9940B_93c8	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
9940B_b7ba	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LTO2_682f	LTO2_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LTO2_6832	LTO2_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LTO2_6835	LTO2_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LTO2_6838	LTO2_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		

- e. Move the resource group containing the openvault resource back to node1:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- f. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- g. Verify that all of the drives become available after a few moments. For example:

```
node1# ov_stat -ld
```

Library Name	Broken	Disabled	State	LCP State
L700A	false	false	ready	ready
SL500-2	false	false	ready	ready

Drive Name	Group	Access	Broken	Disabled	SoftState	HardState	DCP State	Occupied	Cartridge	PCL
9940B_25a1	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
9940B_93c8	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
9940B_b7ba	9940B_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LT02_682f	LT02_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LT02_6832	LT02_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LT02_6835	LT02_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		
LT02_6838	LT02_drives	true	false	false	ready	unloaded	ready	false		

- h. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

openvault Template Reference

An openvault resource controls the start/stop of all OpenVault processes. It is used in a DMF HA service.

This template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/openvault
```

Use the following:

```
primitive OV ocf:sgi:openvault \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="300s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="90s" on-fail="fence" \
```

```
params virtualhost="VIRTUALHOSTVALUE" serverdir="SERVERDIR" \  
meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1" is-managed="false"
```

Variable	Description
<i>OV</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as <i>OV</i> .
<i>VIRTUALHOSTVALUE</i>	Hostname where the OpenVault server will be listening (which must also have its own <i>IPAddr2</i> resource instance, see "IPAddr2 Template" on page 154).
<i>SERVERDIR</i>	<p>The directory that will eventually contain the OpenVault server configuration. <i>SERVERDIR</i> could be a directory that will be dedicated for OpenVault use (such as <code>/dmf/openvault</code>) or it could be an HA filesystem in the same resource group that has sufficient space (such as <code>/dmf/home</code>) to contain the subdirectory (such as <code>/dmf/home/openvault</code>) and its contents. The filesystem must be either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A directory that will become a mountable CXFS filesystem managed by a <i>cxfs</i> resource • A directory that will become a mountable XFS filesystem managed by a <i>Filesystem</i> resource in the same resource group as the <i>openvault</i> resource

Note: As part of the conversion to an HA environment, OpenVault will create this directory and move its database and logs into the directory; OpenVault will fail if the directory already exists.

For example, if you define *SERVERDIR* as `/dmf/home/openvault`, the parent directory `/dmf/home` directory can exist but the entire path `/dmf/home/openvault` **must not** exist.

For example:

```
primitive OV ocf:sgi:openvault \  
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="300s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  </pre>

```

```
op stop interval="0" timeout="90s" on-fail="fence" \  
params virtualhost="myvirtualhost" serverdir="/dmf/home/openvault" \  
meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1" is-managed="false"
```

Note: For the initial configuration process, the setting for the `is-managed` attribute must be `false` as shown above. Step 16 of the procedure in "Configure OpenVault for an HA Environment" on page 186 will reset this attribute to `true` so that the resource will run under HA control.

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Verifies that the OpenVault `serverdir` directory is mounted and that the `VIRTUALHOSTVALUE` IP address is available
- Starts OpenVault with the following command:

```
ov_start server clients
```

- Fails if either `SERVERDIR` or `VIRTUALHOSTVALUE` is unavailable, or if OpenVault does not start

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Stops OpenVault with the following command:

```
ov_stop server clients
```

- Kills any remaining OpenVault processes found by `ov_procs`
- Clears the OpenVault semaphore with the following command:

```
ipcrm -s
```
- Fails if OpenVault could not be stopped or if the semaphore could not be cleared

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

nmb and smb Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Samba Requirements" on page 199
- "Test Samba Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 199
- "Stop the Samba Services Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 200
- "Configure Samba for an HA Environment" on page 200
- "nmb Template Reference" on page 203
- "smb Template Reference" on page 204

Samba Requirements

The `/etc/samba` and `/var/lib/samba` directories must be on shared storage and must use bind mounts.

The Filesystem resources for `/etc/samba` and `/var/lib/samba` require `fstype="none"` (which differs from the `/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/Filesystem` template), and `options="bind"`. See Chapter 21, "Filesystem Resource" on page 145, in particular "Filesystem Example for the Samba Directory bind-Mounted on `/etc/samba`" on page 150

Test Samba Before Applying an HA Environment

Set up the Samba non-HA service on `node1` as you would normally, but place the Samba configuration files and directories on shared storage.

To test the Samba non-HA service, see the following information:

<http://www.samba.org/samba/docs/man/Samba-HOWTO-Collection/install.html>

In particular, see the information about the following topics:

- Listing shares available on the server

- Connecting with a UNIX client
- Connecting from a remote SMB client (but not the information about printing)

Stop the Samba Services Before Applying an HA Environment

On all HA nodes during HA operation, disable the `smb` and `nmb` services from being started automatically at boot time on all HA nodes:

```
ha# chkconfig smb off
ha# chkconfig nmb off
```

If `winbind` is used for authentication, disable the `winbind` service from being started automatically at boot time on all HA nodes:

```
ha# chkconfig winbind off
```

The HA software will control these services.

Configure Samba for an HA Environment

To configure Samba for an HA environment, do the following:

1. If you are using `winbind`, ensure that the HA nodes do not use pluggable authentication modules (PAM) or name service switch (NSS) that could have dependencies on `winbind`. That is, there must not be dependencies on `winbind` in the files in the `/etc/pam.d` directory or the files listed in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file.

Note: Not all configurations with `winbind` will work in an HA cluster.

2. Copy the Samba directories to a shared location. For example:

```
node1# cp -r /etc/samba /mnt/data/.ha/etc_samba
node1# cp -r /var/lib/samba /mnt/data/.ha/var_lib_samba
```

3. Create a `Filesystem` resource for each of the new Samba directories, as described in "Configuring the `Filesystem` Resource for High Availability" on page 145.

For example:

- For the `/mnt/data/.ha/etc_samba` directory, you could use a primitive ID of `etc_samba`, a device value of `/mnt/data/.ha/etc_samba`, and a directory value of `/etc/samba`. In this case, the group definition would be:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources etc_samba
```

- For the `/mnt/data/.ha/var_lib_samba` directory, you could use a primitive ID of `var_lib_samba`, a device value of `/mnt/data/.ha/var_lib_samba`, and a directory value of `/var/lib/samba`. In this case, the group definition would be:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources var_lib_samba
```

For more information about the group definition, see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122.

4. Create another *workfile* that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources SMB NMB
```

If your Samba implementation uses an authentication type that requires the winbind daemon, use the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources SMB NMB WINBIND
```

5. Copy the primitive in the `smb` and `nmb` templates and optionally the `winbind` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "smb Template Reference" on page 204, "nmb Template Reference" on page 203, and "winbind Template Reference" on page 217.
6. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
7. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
8. Save *workfile*.
9. Update the database with the new resources:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

10. Test the new resources:

- a. Ensure that the resource group containing the smb and nmb resources and optionally the winbind resource is on node1:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- b. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- c. Use smbclient from a machine outside of the HA cluster to connect to the Samba server on node1 and copy a file. For example, to log in to node1 as admin (assuming that admin is a valid login name in the homes section of the smb.conf file) copy origfileA to remotefileA on the remote host:

```
otherhost# smbclient //node1/admin  
smb:\> get origfileA remotefileA
```

Note: Depending upon the setting of the security parameter in the smb.conf file, this may involve using a Samba account that already exists.

- d. Move the resource group containing the smb and nmb resources from node1 to node2:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- e. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- f. Use smbclient from a machine outside of the HA cluster to connect to the Samba server on node2 and copy a file. For example, to log in to node2 as admin (assuming that admin is a valid login name in the homes section of the smb.conf file) and copy origfileB to remotefileB on the remote host:

```
otherhost# smbclient //node2/admin  
smb:\> get origfileB remotefileB
```

- g. Move the resource group containing the smb and nmb resources back to node1:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- h. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- i. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command executed above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

nmb Template Reference

An nmb resource controls the nmbd service for Samba. It may be used in a DMF HA service.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/nmb
```

Use the following:

```
primitive NMB lsb:nmb \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="fence" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<i>NMB</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as NMB.

For example:

```
primitive NMB lsb:nmb \  
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="fence" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Starts the `nmbd` service by calling the following:

```
service nmb start
```

- Fails if the `nmbd` service does not start

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Stops the `nmbd` service by calling the following:

```
service nmb stop
```

- Fails if the `nmbd` service does not stop

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

smb Template Reference

An `smb` resource controls the `smb` service for Samba. It may be used in a DMF HA service.

The template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/smb
```

Use the following:

```
primitive SMB lsb:smb \  
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```



```
op stop interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="fence" \
meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<i>SMB</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as SMB.

For example:

```
primitive SMB lsb:smb \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="fence" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Starts the `smbd` service by calling the following:

```
service smb start
```

- Fails if the `smbd` service does not start

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Stops the `smbd` service by calling the following:

```
service smb stop
```

- Fails if the `smbd` service does not stop

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

tmf Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "TMF Requirements" on page 207
- "Test the TMF Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 207
- "Optionally Stop the tmf Service Before Applying HA" on page 208
- "Configure TMF for an HA Environment" on page 208
- "tmf Template Reference" on page 211

TMF Requirements

To use TMF as the mounting service, all tape devices should be configured as `DOWN` in the TMF configuration file on all nodes. The loaders should be configured as `UP`. The `tmf` service may be disabled at boot time (`chkconfig tmf off`) for all nodes; the resource agent will start `tmf` and configure the loader up as needed.

Note: If tape drives are defined and used outside of DMF, you must manually start TMF on the inactive server.

Test the TMF Service Before Applying an HA Environment

Configure TMF on `node1` according to the instructions in the *TMF 6 Administrator Guide for SGI InfiniteStorage* and run the following on `node1`:

```
node1# chkconfig tmf on
```

Note: In the `tmf.config` file, drives in drive groups managed by HA software should have access configured as `EXCLUSIVE` and should have status configured as `DOWN` when TMF starts. Loaders in the `tmf.config` file should have status configured as `UP` when TMF starts.

To test the TMF non-HA service, do the following:

1. Use `tmstat` to verify that all of the tape drives have a status of `idle` or `assn`:

```
node1# tmstat
```

2. Use `tmmls` to verify that all of the loaders have a status of `UP`:

```
node1# tmmls
```

Optionally Stop the `tmf` Service Before Applying HA

To use the `tmf` resource, you can optionally stop the `tmf` service on each node before applying an HA environment:

```
node1# chkconfig tmf off
```

```
node1# service tmf stop
```

```
node2# chkconfig tmf off
```

```
node2# service tmf stop
```

The HA software will control this service.

Note: There are other associated services in a DMF environment that you must stop. See "Stop Services Related to DMF Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 64.

Configure TMF for an HA Environment

To configure TMF for an HA environment, do the following:

1. Modify the `/etc/tmf/tmf.config` file so that all tape devices belonging to device groups that are managed by HA are configured `DOWN` in the `status` parameter in the `DEVICE` definition.

2. Copy the following file from `node1` to `node2`:

```
/etc/tmf/tmf.config
```

3. On `node2`, if the tape drive pathname (the `FILE` parameter in the `DEVICE` definition) for a given drive is not the same as the pathname for the same drive on `node1`, modify the pathname in the `/etc/tmf.config` file on `node2` so that it points to the appropriate pathname.

4. Create another *workfile* that contains the following:

```
group DMF-GROUP Previously_Added_Resources TMF
```

For more information about the group definition, see "DMF-GROUP Template Reference" on page 122.

5. Copy the primitive in the `tmf` template into *workfile* and replace the site-specific variables as directed in the template comments or in "`tmf` Template Reference" on page 211.
6. Verify that the `timeout` values are appropriate for your site.
7. Verify that there are no comments in *workfile*.
8. Save *workfile*.
9. Update the database with the new resource:

```
node1# crm configure load update workfile
```

10. Test the new `tmf` resource:

- a. Use `tmmls` to show the loader status.
- b. Use `tmstat` to show the drive status. Verify that all of the tape drives in all HA device groups are in `assn` or `idle` status on `node1`.
- c. Move the resource group containing the TMF resource to `node2`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node2
```

- d. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- e. Verify that the state is correct:
 - Use `tmstat` to verify that the tape drives all have a status of `down` or `sdwn` on `node1` and that they have a status of `idle` or `assn` on `node2`
 - Use `tmmls` to verify that all of the loaders on `node1` still have a status of `UP`
- f. Verify that the `timeout` values for the `start`, `stop`, and `monitor` operations are appropriate. Use the following guidelines:

- i. On node2, look in the log files (see "Examine Log Files" on page 24) for the time when the resource start operation started and ended. Also capture the start and end times of the monitor operation.
- ii. On node1, look in the log files to find the start and stop times for the stop operation.
- iii. Subtract the ending time from the starting time in each case to get the required time for each operation.
- iv. Based on the above, choose values that you estimate will be acceptable timeouts that are sufficiently long so that you do not risk unnecessary failovers. In general, start with a longer timeout and shorten as required.

Following are examples of finding the start, stop, and monitor operation durations on a SLES system (line breaks shown here for readability):

```
node1 -> egrep "do_lrm_rsc_op.*Performing.*tmf_start|process_lrm_event.*tmf_start" /var/log/messages
May 11 08:20:53 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: do_lrm_rsc_op: Performing
    key=47:81:0:562726de-a397-4c6c-8501-b273c214eb3f op=tmf_start_0 )
May 11 08:21:10 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: process_lrm_event: LRM operation tmf_start_0 (call=90, rc=0,
    cib-update=88, confirmed=true) ok
```

```
node1 -> egrep "do_lrm_rsc_op.*Performing.*tmf_stop|process_lrm_event.*tmf_stop" /var/log/messages
May 11 08:27:39 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: do_lrm_rsc_op: Performing
    key=46:82:0:562726de-a397-4c6c-8501-b273c214eb3f op=tmf_stop_0 )
May 11 08:27:40 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: process_lrm_event: LRM operation tmf_stop_0 (call=92, rc=0,
    cib-update=100, confirmed=true) ok
```

```
node1 -> egrep "do_lrm_rsc_op.*Performing.*tmf_monitor|process_lrm_event.*tmf_monitor" /var/log/messages
May 11 08:08:21 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: do_lrm_rsc_op: Performing
    key=16:78:7:562726de-a397-4c6c-8501-b273c214eb3f op=tmf_monitor_0 )
May 11 08:08:21 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: process_lrm_event: LRM operation tmf_monitor_0 (call=69, rc=7,
    cib-update=77, confirmed=true) not running
May 11 08:21:10 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: do_lrm_rsc_op: Performing
    key=48:81:0:562726de-a397-4c6c-8501-b273c214eb3f op=tmf_monitor_30000 )
May 11 08:21:11 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: process_lrm_event: LRM operation tmf_monitor_30000 (call=91,
    rc=0, cib-update=89, confirmed=false) ok
May 11 08:27:39 node1 crmd: [6498]: info: process_lrm_event: LRM operation tmf_monitor_30000 (call=91,
    status=1, cib-update=0, confirmed=true) Cancelled
```

- g. Modify values in the primitive definition as needed.

- h. Move the resource group containing the `tmf` resource back to `node1`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

- i. Verify the status:

```
node1# crm status
```

- j. Verify that the state is correct:

- Use `tmstat` to verify that the tape drives all have a status of `down` or `sdwn` on `node2` and that they have a status of `idle` or `assn` on `node1`
- Use `tmmls` to verify that all of the loaders on `node2` still have a status of `UP`

- k. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative `move` command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

tmf Template Reference

This template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/tmf
```

A `tmf` resource controls the start/stop of TMF. It may be used in a DMF HA service.

Use the following:

```
primitive TMF ocf:sgi:tmf \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="fence" \
  params devgrpnames="DEVGRPNAME-LIST" mindevsup="MINDEVSUP-LIST" \
    devtimeout="DEVTIMEOUT-LIST" loader_names="LOADERNAME-LIST" \
    loader_hosts="HOST-LIST" loader_users="USER-LIST" \
    loader_passwords="PASSWORD-LIST" admin_emails="EMAIL-ADDRESS-LIST" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<i>TMF</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as <code>TMF</code> .
<i>DEVGRPNAME-LIST</i>	Comma-separated list of TMF device groups defined in the <code>tmf.config</code> file that are to be managed by HA software, such as: <code>ibm3592,t10ka</code>
<i>MINDEVSUP-LIST</i>	Comma-separated list of the minimum number of devices, one entry per device group, that must be configured up successfully within the corresponding device group in order to count the group as being highly available, such as: <code>1,0</code> <hr/> <p>Note: A value of 0 indicates that failover will never be initiated, even if all the devices in that device group are unavailable. This value is supported for all device groups; however, in order for TMF to be considered up, at least one tape device in some device group must be up. If there are no devices up in all defined device groups, then the resource agent will be considered to be in a stopped state, which will impact the resource monitor and the resource start actions.</p> <hr/>
<i>DEVTIMEOUT-LIST</i>	Comma-separated list of device timeouts in seconds, one entry per device group, that are used to decide how long to wait for a device in that device group to finish configuring up or down, such as: <code>120,240</code> Changing the up/down state of a device may require rewinding and unloading a tape left in the drive by a previous host. Different tape device types have different maximum rewind and unload times, which can be obtained from the vendor's product literature. To calculate the timeout value for a particular device group, add the maximum rewind time for a device in that group to the device's unload time plus add an

additional 10 seconds to allow for any required robot hand movement.

For example, 3592 tape drives with a maximum rewind time of 78 seconds and an unload time of 21 seconds require a value of $78+21+10=109$ seconds. 9940B tape drives with a maximum rewind time of 90 seconds and an unload time of 18 seconds require a value of $90+18+10=118$.

Note: The `tmf` resource agent will try twice to configure each drive up before considering it unusable, so the `start timeout` value should therefore be at least twice the greatest value in `DEVTIMEOUT-LIST`. For example, $2*118=236$. You should usually use the same timeout value for `start` and `stop`.

LOADERNAME-LIST

Comma-separated list of loader names configured in `DEVGRPNAME-LIST` `tmf.config` that correspond to the device groups listed in `DEVGRPNAME-LIST`, such as:

```
ibm3494,1700a
```

HOST-LIST

Comma-separated list of hosts through which the corresponding loaders listed in `LOADERNAME-LIST` are controlled, such as:

```
ibm3494cps,stkacsls
```

USER-LIST

Comma-separated list of user names that are used to log in to the corresponding hosts listed in `HOST-LIST`, such as:

```
root,acssa
```

PASSWORD-LIST

Comma-separated list of passwords corresponding to the user names listed in `USER-LIST`, such as:

```
passwd1,passwd2
```

EMAIL-ADDRESS-LIST

(Optional) Comma-separated list of administrator email addresses corresponding to the device groups listed in *DEVGRPNAME-LIST*, such as:

```
root,admin1
```

Note: You can use the same email address for more than one device group (such as `admin1,admin1`). The email address will be used to send a message whenever tape drives that were previously available become unavailable, so that the administrator can take action to repair the drives in a timely fashion.

For example:

```
primitive TMF ocf:sgi:tmf \
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \
  op start interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \
  op stop interval="0" timeout="600s" on-fail="fence" \
  params devgrpnames="ibm3592,t10ka" mindevsup="1,0" devtimeout="120,240" \
    loader_names="ibm3494,1700a" loader_hosts="ibm3494cps,stkacsls" \
    loader_users="root,acssa" loader_passwords="passwd1,passwd2" \
    admin_emails="root,admin1" \
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first `monitor` operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The `start` operation does the following:

- Starts the TMF daemon if necessary
- Configures up the tape loader and all tape drives in each device group
- Preempts reservations
- Forces dismount if necessary
- Fails if insufficient drives come up in any device group

The `stop` operation does the following:

- Configures down all tape drives in each device group
- Forces a release of drives allocated to a user job
- Fails if any drive in any device group could not be stopped

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

winbind Resource

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Test the Winbind Service Before Applying an HA Environment" on page 217
- "winbind Template Reference" on page 217

Test the Winbind Service Before Applying an HA Environment

Do the following to test the Winbind configuration before applying the HA environment:

1. Verify the configuration:
 - a. List the users of the domain:

```
node1# wbinfo -u
```
 - b. List the groups:

```
node1# wbinfo -g
```
2. Verify the nsswitch module:
 - a. Verify the password:

```
node1# sudo getent passwd
```
 - b. Verify the groups:

```
node1# sudo getent group
```

winbind Template Reference

This template is located in:

```
/usr/share/doc/sgi-ha/templates/winbind
```

If your Samba implementation uses an authentication type that requires the winbind daemon, you can use a winbind resource to control it. It may be used in a DMF HA service.

Use the following:

```
primitive WINBIND lsb:winbind \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="fence" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

Variable	Description
<i>WINBIND</i>	Name of this resource instance, such as WINBIND

For example:

```
primitive WINBIND lsb:winbind \  
  op monitor interval="0" timeout="60s" \  
  op monitor interval="120s" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" \  
  op start interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="restart" requires="fencing" \  
  op stop interval="0" timeout="60s" on-fail="fence" \  
  meta resource-stickiness="1" migration-threshold="1"
```

The first monitor operation probes to see if the resource is already running and the second periodically verifies that it continues to run.

The start operation does the following:

- Starts the winbind service by calling the following:

```
service smb winbind
```

- Fails if the winbind service does not start

The stop operation does the following:

- Stops the smbd service by calling the following:

```
service smb winbind
```

- Fails if the winbind service does not stop

To add more resources, see "Map of Resources for the DMF HA Service" on page 61.

Administrative Tasks and Considerations

This chapter discusses various administrative tasks and considerations for an HA cluster:

- "Viewing the Cluster Status " on page 220
- "Viewing the Cluster Configuration" on page 221
- "Putting the Cluster into Maintenance Mode" on page 221
- "Backing Up the CIB" on page 222
- "Understanding CIFS and NFS in an HA Cluster" on page 222
- "Reviewing the Log Files" on page 222
- "Clearing the Resource Failcount" on page 222
- "Clearing the Resource State on a Node" on page 223
- "Controlling the Number of Historical Files" on page 223
- "Changing DMF Configuration Parameters" on page 224
- "Restarting the OpenVault Server" on page 224
- "Manually Moving a `copan_ov_client` Resource" on page 225
- "Performing a Rolling Upgrade" on page 227
- "Stopping the Underlying HA Control Services" on page 235
- "Manually Resetting a Node" on page 236
- "Hardware Maintenance on a Cluster Node" on page 236
- "Maintenance with a Full Cluster Outage" on page 242

Viewing the Cluster Status

Use the following commands to view the cluster status:

```
ha# crm status
ha# crm_verify -LV
ha# crm status failcounts
```

For example, the following truncated output shows that there was an error in starting DMF on node2:

```
node1# crm status failcounts
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
9 Resources configured.

Online: [ node1 node2 ]

Resource Group: DMF-GROUP
  LXVM      (ocf::sgi:lxvm):      Started node1
  home      (ocf::heartbeat:Filesystem): Started node1
  spool     (ocf::heartbeat:Filesystem): Started node1
  journals  (ocf::heartbeat:Filesystem): Started node1
  tmp       (ocf::heartbeat:Filesystem): Started node1
  store     (ocf::heartbeat:Filesystem): Started node1
  dmi_fs    (ocf::heartbeat:Filesystem): Started node1
  IP        (ocf::heartbeat:IPaddr2):    Started node1
  DMF       (ocf::sgi:dmf): Started node1

Migration summary:
* Node node1:
* Node node2:
  DMF: migration-threshold=1 fail-count=1000000

Failed actions:
  DMF_start_0 (node=node2, call=34, rc=-2, status=Timed Out): unknown exec error
```


Viewing the Cluster Configuration

To view the cluster configuration, enter the following:

```
ha# crm configure show
```

If you want to view the entire contents of the cluster information base (CIB) in XML format, including dynamic status information, you can use the following `cibadmin(8)` command:

```
ha# cibadmin -Q
```

To limit the output to a specific set of information, use the following:

```
ha# cibadmin -o modifier -Q
```

The *modifier* value can be one of the following:

```
constraints  
crm_config  
nodes  
resources  
status
```

Putting the Cluster into Maintenance Mode

You must put the cluster into maintenance mode before manually stopping or restarting any cluster components. To put the cluster into maintenance mode, enter the following:

```
ha# crm configure property maintenance-mode=true
```

You can then manually stop and restart individual resources as needed.

To return the cluster to managed status, enter the following:

```
ha# crm configure property maintenance-mode=false
```

Backing Up the CIB

You should make a backup copy of the configuration in the cluster information base (CIB) after making and verifying changes, so that you can easily recover in case of future CIB corruption (see "Recovering from a CIB Corruption" on page 263). Do the following to save only static configuration information to a plain text file labeled with the current date and time:

```
ha# crm configure save CIB.$(date +%Y%m%d-%H%M%S)
```

You can view the resulting text file with any text tool, such as `cat(1)` or `vi(1)`.

Understanding CIFS and NFS in an HA Cluster

CIFS failover requires that the client application reissue the I/O after the failover occurs. Applications such as XCOPY will do this, but many other applications will not. Applications that do not retry may abort when CIFS services are moved between nodes.

NFS failover is handled by the kernel, so no changes are required for an NFS client application; applications doing I/O on NFS will pause while the failover is occurring.

Reviewing the Log Files

See "Examine Log Files" on page 24.

Clearing the Resource Failcount

To clear individual resource failcounts, either reboot the nodes or enter the following on each node for each individual resource:

```
ha# crm resource failcount resource delete nodename
```

Clearing the Resource State on a Node



Caution: Do not clear the resource state on the node where a resource is currently running.

After you resolve the cause of `action` error messages in the `crm status` output, you should enter the following to clear the resource state from a given node:

```
ha# crm resource cleanup resource nodename
```

Note: Sometimes, the resource state can be cleared automatically if the same action for the same resource on the same node subsequently completes successfully.

Controlling the Number of Historical Files

Each time the configuration is updated, a new version of the CIB is created and the older version is saved. These files reside in `/var/lib/pacemaker/pengine`.

SGI recommends that you keep the number of files manageable by setting the following `crm` properties as appropriate for your site:

```
pe-error-series-max  
pe-input-series-max  
pe-warn-series-max
```

To set the properties, use the following command line:

```
# crm configure property propertyname=value
```

For example, to set a maximum of 50 error, input, and warning files:

```
ha# crm configure property pe-error-series-max=50  
ha# crm configure property pe-input-series-max=50  
ha# crm configure property pe-warn-series-max=50
```

For more information, see the documentation listed in "High Availability Overview" on page 1.

Changing DMF Configuration Parameters

You can change many DMF configuration-file parameters while DMF is running, but others require that DMF be stopped. For more information, see the “Best Practices” chapter in *DMF 6 Administrator Guide*). For those parameters that require DMF to be stopped, do the following:

1. Put the cluster into maintenance mode:

```
ha# crm configure property maintenance-mode=true
```

2. Stop the DMF service:

```
ha# service dmf stop
```

3. Make the required changes to the DMF configuration file according to the instructions in the DMF administrator’s guide, such as by using DMF Manager.

4. Verify the parameter changes by using DMF Manager or the following command:

```
ha# dmcheck
```

5. Start the DMF service:

```
ha# service dmf start
```

6. Verify DMF functionality, such as by running the following command and other DMF commands (based on the changes made):

```
ha# dmdstat -v
```

7. Return the cluster to managed status:

```
ha# crm configure property maintenance-mode=false
```

Restarting the OpenVault Server

To restart the OpenVault server, do the following:

1. Put the HA cluster into maintenance mode:

```
ha# crm configure property maintenance-mode=true
```

2. Stop the OpenVault service:

```
ha# service openvault stop
```

3. Start the OpenVault service:

```
ha# service openvault start
```

4. Return the HA cluster to managed status:

```
ha# crm configure property maintenance-mode=false
```

Manually Moving a `copan_ov_client` Resource

You may want to manually move a `copan_ov_client` resource as followings:

- To its failover node when you want to perform maintenance on its default node
- Back to its default node, after maintenance is complete on the default node
- Back to its default node, after the formerly failed default node rejoins the HA cluster

Before you can move the resource from one node to another, you must ensure that you stop any activity occurring on the COPAN MAID shelf that is managed by the resource. This requires that you disable the mover capability on the currently active node (which stops activity for all shelves owned by that node).

You must also ensure that the new node is ready to receive the resource:

- The node must be online
- The CXFS client and STONITH services must be operational on the node

For example, to move the `C01` resource from parallel data-mover node `mover1` to parallel data-mover node `mover2`:

1. Verify that `mover2` is ready to receive the resource by examining its status output with the `crm(8)` command. For example:

```
mover2# crm status
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
6 Resources configured.

Online: [ mover1 mover2 ]

Clone Set: CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE [CXFS_CLIENT]
  Started: [ mover1 mover2 ]
C00 (ocf::sgi:copan_ov_client):      Started mover1
```

```
C01 (ocf::sgi:copan_ov_client):      Started mover1
Clone Set: STONITH-node1 [stonith-ipmi]
      Started: [ mover1 mover2 ]
```

In the above output, note the following:

- The C01 resource is Started on mover1
 - mover2 is Online
 - The CXFS-CLIENT and STONITH-node1 clones have a status of Started on mover2
2. On the DMF server, disable mover1 so that it will cease all COPAN MAID shelf activity:

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -d mover1
```

3. Verify that there are no dmatwc or dmatrc data-mover processes running on mover1. For example, the output of the following command should be empty:

```
mover1# ps -ef | egrep 'dmatrc|dmatwc' | grep -v grep
mover1#
```

If the output is not empty, you must wait for the dmnode_admin -d action from step 2 to complete (the entire process can take 6 minutes or longer). Rerun the ps command until there is no output.

4. Clear any failcounts and move the resource to mover2:

```
mover2# crm resource failcount C00 delete mover2
mover2# crm resource move C00 mover2
```

This may take a few moments to complete.

5. Verify that the resource has moved to mover2. For example:

```
mover2# crm status
...
2 Nodes configured, 2 expected votes
6 Resources configured.

Online: [ mover1 mover2 ]

Clone Set: CXFS-CLIENT-CLONE [CXFS_CLIENT]
      Started: [ mover1 mover2 ]
```

```
C00 (ocf::sgi:copan_ov_client):      Started mover1
C01 (ocf::sgi:copan_ov_client):      Started mover2
Clone Set: STONITH-node1 [stonith-ipmi]
      Started: [ mover1 mover2 ]
```

In the above output, note that C01 resource is started on mover2.

6. Remove the constraint that requires C01 to be controlled by mover2:

```
mover2# crm resource unmove C01
```

7. Repeat steps 3 through 6 for any other `copan_ov_client` resources requiring a move from mover1 to mover2.
8. On the DMF server, reenable mover1 so that it can resume COPAN MAID shelf activity:

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -e mover1
```

Performing a Rolling Upgrade

Note: Some software may not allow a rolling upgrade. Such a situation might require an extended outage window with all resources down and the appropriate underlying HA control services (`cman` and `pacemaker` for RHEL, `openais` for SLES) turned off, which would permit more thorough testing (similar to that done during the initial installation). See "Maintenance with a Full Cluster Outage" on page 242.

Assuming that you have a two-node production HA environment in place and want to perform a rolling upgrade of appropriate software with minimal testing, use the procedures in the following sections:

- "COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service for Mover Nodes Rolling Upgrade" on page 228
- "CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Rolling Upgrade" on page 229
- "DMF HA Rolling Upgrade" on page 232

COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service for Mover Nodes Rolling Upgrade

Do the following for a rolling upgrade in an HA cluster that consists of two parallel data-mover nodes (`mover1` and `mover1`):

1. Read the release notes for the software you intend to upgrade and any late-breaking caveats on Supportfolio™ Online:

<https://support.sgi.com/login>

2. Ensure that the HA cluster, the underlying CXFS cluster, and all other hardware and software components are in a healthy state. Ensure that all resource failcounts are cleared and that no constraints are present other than permanent constraints.
3. Move any `copan_ov_client` resources running on `mover2` to `mover1` according to the directions in "Manually Moving a `copan_ov_client` Resource" on page 225.
4. Stop all services on `mover2` and ensure that they will not restart on the next boot of `mover2`:

- RHEL:

```
mover2# chkconfig cman off
mover2# chkconfig pacemaker off

mover2# service cman stop
mover2# service pacemaker stop
```

- SLES:

```
mover2# chkconfig openais off

mover2# service openais stop
```

5. Upgrade the software on `mover2`.
6. Reboot `mover2`.

7. Ensure that the services will restart upon reboot and start services immediately:

- RHEL:

```
mover2# service cman start
mover2# service pacemaker start
```

```
mover2# chkconfig cman on
mover2# chkconfig pacemaker on
```

- SLES:

```
mover2# service openais start
```

```
mover2# chkconfig openais on
```

8. Move all `copan_ov_client` resources running on `mover1` to `mover2` according to the directions in "Manually Moving a `copan_ov_client` Resource" on page 225.
9. Repeat step 4 through step 7 above but executed for `mover1`.
10. Move the `copan_ov_client` resources than normally run on `mover1` back to that node, according to the directions in "Manually Moving a `copan_ov_client` Resource" on page 225.
11. Remove the constraints required to move the resources by executing the following command for each `copan_ov_client` resource

```
mover2# crm resource unmove copan_ov_client_name
```

The cluster is now back to normal operational state.

CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Rolling Upgrade

Note: Due to the way that NLM grace notification is implemented, all of the server-capable administration nodes in the CXFS cluster must run the same version of CXFS in order to use CXFS relocation. Therefore, you must use CXFS recovery and not CXFS relocation during a rolling upgrade.

Do the following for a rolling upgrade in a CXFS NFS edge-serving HA cluster with two nodes (`node1` and `node2`):

1. Read the release notes for the software you intend to upgrade.

For ISSP software, read the *SGI InfiniteStorage Software Platform Release Note* and any late-breaking caveats on Supportfolio™ Online:

<https://support.sgi.com/login>

2. Ensure that the HA cluster, the underlying CXFS cluster, and all other hardware and software components are in a healthy state. Ensure that all resource failcounts are cleared and that no constraints are present other than permanent constraints.
3. Ensure that the resource groups are running on node1:

```
node1# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-1 node1
node1# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-2 node1
```

4. Set the node you intend to upgrade to standby state. (Putting a node in standby state will move, if possible, or stop any resources that are running on that node.) For example, if you intend to upgrade node2:

```
node1# crm node standby node2
```

This will shut down CXFS_CLIENT on node2 automatically.

5. Disable the appropriate underlying HA control services from being started automatically at boot time and stop the currently running services:

- RHEL:

```
node2# chkconfig cman off
node2# chkconfig pacemaker off
```

```
node2# service cman stop
node2# service pacemaker stop
```

- SLES:

```
node2# chkconfig openais off
node2# service openais stop
```

6. Upgrade the software on node2.
7. Reboot node2 and verify basic upgraded functionality.

8. Enable HA services to be started automatically at boot time and immediately start it on node2:

- RHEL:

```
node2# chkconfig cman on
node2# chkconfig pacemaker on
```

```
node2# service cman start
node2# service pacemaker start
```

- SLES:

```
node2# chkconfig openais on
node2# service openais start
```

9. Make node2 active again:

```
node1# crm node online node2
```

10. Move the resource groups from node1 to node2:

```
node1# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-1 node2
node1# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-2 node2
```

11. *(Optional)* Allow the resource groups to run on node2 for a period of time as a test.
12. Repeat steps 4 through 11 above but switching the roles for node1 and node2.

Note: In most cases, you will want to leave the resource groups running on node2 in order to avoid any unnecessary interruptions to the services that would have to be restarted if they were moved to node1. However, if you prefer to have the resource groups run on node1 despite any potential interruptions, do the following:

1. Move the appropriate resource group from node2 back to node1. For example:

```
node1# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-1 node1
```

2. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove IPALIAS-GROUP-1
node1# crm resource unmove IPALIAS-GROUP-2
```

DMF HA Rolling Upgrade

Do the following for a rolling upgrade in a DMF HA cluster with two nodes (`node1` and `node2`):

1. Read the release notes for the software you intend to upgrade.

For ISSP software, read the *SGI InfiniteStorage Software Platform Release Note* and any late-breaking caveats on Supportfolio Online:

<https://support.sgi.com/login>

2. Ensure that the HA cluster, the underlying CXFS cluster (if applicable), and all other hardware and software components are in a healthy state. Ensure that all resource failcounts are cleared and that no constraints are present other than intended constraints.
3. Disable the CXFS services from being started automatically at boot time:

```
node2# chkconfig cxfs off
node2# chkconfig cxfs_cluster off
```

4. Disable the appropriate underlying HA control services from being started automatically at boot time:

- RHEL:

```
node2# chkconfig cman off
node2# chkconfig pacemaker off
```

- SLES:

```
node2# chkconfig openais off
```

5. Ensure that the resource groups are running on `node1`.

Note: Moving the DMF-GROUP resource group will involve CXFS relocation of the DMF administrative filesystems and DMF managed user filesystems. However, you cannot use CXFS relocation if your CXFS cluster also includes a CXFS NFS edge-server HA pair and the CXFS server-capable administration nodes are running different software levels. If that is the case, you must move the DMF-GROUP resource group via CXFS recovery by resetting the node that is running the DMF-GROUP resource.

Do one of the following, as appropriate for your site:

- Using CXFS recovery:

```
node1# crm node fence node2
```

- Using CXFS relocation:

Note: Stopping the appropriate underlying HA control services will cause a failover if there are resources running on the node. Depending on how things are defined and whether the resource `stop` actions succeed, it might even cause the node to be reset.

- RHEL:

```
node2# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

```
node2# service cman stop
```

```
node2# service pacemaker stop
```

```
node2# service cxfs stop
```

```
node2# service cxfs_cluster stop
```

- SLES:

```
node2# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

```
node2# service openais stop
```

```
node2# service cxfs stop
```

```
node2# service cxfs_cluster stop
```

6. Verify that the services have moved to node1.
7. Upgrade the software on node2 and reboot.

8. Add `node2` back into the CXFS cluster (if present) by enabling the services to be started automatically at boot time and then starting them immediately:

```
node2# chkconfig cxfs_cluster on
node2# chkconfig cxfs on
```

```
node2# service cxfs_cluster start
node2# service cxfs start
```

9. Verify that `node2` is fully back in the CXFS cluster with filesystems mounted.
10. Enable the appropriate underlying HA control services to be started automatically at boot time and then start them immediately on `node2`:

- RHEL:

```
node2# chkconfig cman on
node2# chkconfig pacemaker on
```

```
node2# service cman start
node2# service pacemaker start
```

- SLES:

```
node2# chkconfig openais on
```

```
node2# service openais start
```

11. Repeat steps 3 through 10 above but executed for `node1`.

Note: In most cases, you will want to leave the resource group running on `node2` in order to avoid any unnecessary interruptions to the services that would have to be restarted if they were moved to `node1`. However, if you prefer to have the resource group run on `node1` despite any potential interruptions, do the following:

1. Move the appropriate resource groups from `node2` back to `node1`:

```
node1# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

2. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative `move` command above:

```
node1# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```

The cluster is now back to normal operational state.

Stopping the Underlying HA Control Services

Note: Stopping HA control services will cause a failover if there are resources running on the node. Depending on how things are defined and whether the resource `stop` actions succeed, it might even cause the node to be reset.

To stop the appropriate underlying HA control services on the local node, enter the following:

- RHEL:

```
ha# service cman stop  
ha# service pacemaker stop
```

- SLES:

```
ha# service openais stop
```

Manually Resetting a Node

To manually issue a system reset of a given node, execute the following from a different node in the HA cluster:

```
ha# crm node fence node_to_be_reset
```

Note: This command requires that the `stonith` resource is defined and enabled in the CIB.

For example, to reset `node1` from `node2`:

```
node2# crm node fence node1
```

Hardware Maintenance on a Cluster Node

This section discusses the following:

- "Hardware Maintenance in a COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service" on page 236
- "Hardware Maintenance in a CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 239
- "Hardware Maintenance in a DMF HA Service" on page 240

Hardware Maintenance in a COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service

If you must perform maintenance on one node in the cluster that provides the COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service, do the following:

1. Ensure that the HA cluster, the underlying CXFS cluster, and all other hardware and software components are in a healthy state. Ensure that all resource failcounts are cleared and that no constraints are present other than permanent constraints.
2. On the DMF server, disable the parallel data-mover node on which you want to perform maintenance (`downnode`) so that it will cease all COPAN MAID shelf activity:

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -d downnode
```

Wait for the activity to cease on `downnode` before continuing to the next step.

3. Verify that there are no `dmatwc` or `dmatrc` data-mover processes running on `downnode`. For example, the output of the following command should be empty:

```
downnode# ps -ef | egrep 'dmatrc|dmatwc' | grep -v grep
downnode#
```

If the output is not empty, you must wait for the `dmnode_admin -d` action from step 2 to complete (the entire process can take 6 minutes or longer). Rerun the `ps` command until there is no output.

4. Ensure that any `copan_ov_client` shelf resources are running on the node that **does not** require maintenance (`upnode`). For example:

```
downnode# crm resource move C00 upnode
downnode# crm resource move C01 upnode
```

5. Set `downnode` to standby state. (Putting a node in standby state will move, if possible, or stop any resources that are running on that node.) For example:

```
upnode# crm node standby downnode
```

This will shut down `CXFS_CLIENT` on `downnode` automatically.

6. Disable the appropriate underlying HA control services from being started automatically on `downnode` at boot time and stop the currently running services:

- RHEL:

```
downnode# chkconfig cman off
downnode# chkconfig pacemaker off
```

```
downnode# service cman stop
downnode# service pacemaker stop
```

- SLES:

```
downnode# chkconfig openais off
downnode# service openais stop
```

7. Perform maintenance on `downnode`.
8. Reboot `downnode` and verify basic functionality.

9. Enable HA services to be started automatically at boot time and immediately start it on downnode:

- RHEL:

```
downnode# chkconfig cman on
downnode# chkconfig pacemaker on

downnode# service cman start
downnode# service pacemaker start
```

- SLES:

```
downnode# chkconfig openais on
downnode# service openais start
```

10. Make downnode active again:

```
downnode# crm node online downnode
```

11. (Optional) If you want to move shelf resources back to downnode:

- a. On the DMF server, disable the other parallel data-mover node (upnode):

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -d upnode
```

Wait for the activity to cease on upnode before continuing to the next step.

- b. Verify that there are no `dmatwc` or `dmatrc` data-mover processes running on upnode, as in step 3.
- c. Move back all of the `copan_ov_client` resources (for example, C00 and C01) that you want to run on downnode:

```
upnode# crm resource move C00 downnode
upnode# crm resource move C01 downnode
```

- d. On the DMF server, reenable upnode so that it will permit COPAN MAID shelf activity:

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -e upnode
```

- e. On the DMF server, reenable downnode so that it will permit COPAN MAID shelf activity:

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -e downnode
```

12. Remove any implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move commands above. For example:

```
downnode# crm resource unmove C00
downnode# crm resource unmove C01
```

Hardware Maintenance in a CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service

If you must perform maintenance on one node in the cluster that provides the CXFS NFS edge-serving HA service, do the following:

1. Ensure that the HA cluster, the underlying CXFS cluster, and all other hardware and software components are in a healthy state. Ensure that all resource failcounts are cleared and that no constraints are present other than permanent constraints.
2. Ensure that the resource groups are running on the node that **does not** require maintenance (upnode). For example:

```
downnode# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-2 upnode
```

3. Set the node on which you intend to perform maintenance (downnode) to standby state. (Putting a node in standby state will move, if possible, or stop any resources that are running on that node.) For example, if you intend to upgrade downnode:

```
upnode# crm node standby downnode
```

This will shut down CXFS_CLIENT on downnode automatically.

4. Disable the appropriate underlying HA control services from being started automatically on downnode at boot time and stop the currently running services:

- RHEL:

```
downnode# chkconfig cman off
downnode# chkconfig pacemaker off
```

```
downnode# service cman stop
downnode# service pacemaker stop
```

- SLES:

```
downnode# chkconfig openais off
downnode# service openais stop
```

5. Perform maintenance on downnode.

6. Reboot downnode and verify basic functionality.
7. Enable HA services to be started automatically at boot time and immediately start it on downnode:

- RHEL:

```
downnode# chkconfig cman on
downnode# chkconfig pacemaker on

downnode# service cman start
downnode# service pacemaker start
```

- SLES:

```
downnode# chkconfig openais on
downnode# service openais start
```

8. Make downnode active again:

```
downnode# crm node online downnode
```

9. Move back any resource groups that you want to run on downnode. For example:

```
upnode# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-2 downnode
```

10. Remove any implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move commands above. For example:

```
downnode# crm resource unmove IPALIAS-GROUP-2
```

Hardware Maintenance in a DMF HA Service

If you must perform maintenance on one node in the cluster that provides the DMF HA service, do the following:

1. On the node that requires maintenance (downnode), disable the underlying HA control services from being started automatically at boot time:

- RHEL:

```
downnode# chkconfig cman off
downnode# chkconfig pacemaker off
```

- SLES:

```
downnode# chkconfig openais off
```

2. If `downnode` is a CXFS server-capable administration node, disable the `cxfs` and `cxfs_cluster` services from being started automatically at boot time:

```
downnode# chkconfig cxfs off
downnode# chkconfig cxfs_cluster off
```

3. As a precaution, run the `sync(8)` command to flush disk buffers, synchronizing the data on disk with memory:

```
downnode# sync
```

4. Reset `downnode` in order to force resources to be moved to `upnode`:

```
upnode# crm node fence downnode
```

5. Verify that resources are running on `upnode`:

```
upnode# crm status
```

6. Perform the required maintenance on `downnode`.

7. Reboot `downnode` and ensure that is stable before proceeding.

8. If `downnode` was a CXFS server-capable administration node, do the following:

- a. Enable the `cxfs` and `cxfs_cluster` services to start automatically at boot time and start them immediately on `downnode`:

```
downnode# chkconfig cxfs_cluster on
downnode# chkconfig cxfs on
```

```
downnode# service cxfs_cluster start
downnode# service cxfs start
```

- b. Verify that CXFS is functioning properly on `downnode`, such as if the node joined the cluster and mounted filesystems.

9. Enable the HA service to be started automatically at boot time and start it immediately on `downnode`:

- RHEL:

```
downnode# chkconfig cman on
downnode# chkconfig pacemaker on
```

```
downnode# service cman start
```

```
downnode# service pacemaker start
```

- SLES:

```
downnode# chkconfig openais on
```

```
downnode# service openais start
```

10. Verify that downnode rejoins the HA cluster:

```
downnode# crm status
```

Note: In most cases, you will want to leave the resources running on upnode in order to avoid any unnecessary interruptions to the services that would have to be restarted if they were moved to downnode. However, if you prefer to have the resources run on downnode despite any potential interruptions, do the following:

1. Restart resources on downnode:

```
downnode# crm resource move ResourceName downnode
```

2. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move:

```
downnode# crm resource unmove ResourceName
```

Maintenance with a Full Cluster Outage

This section discusses the following:

- "Full Outage for COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service on Mover Nodes" on page 243
- "Full Outage for CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service" on page 245
- "Full Outage for DMF HA Service" on page 247

Full Outage for COPAN MAID OpenVault Client HA Service on Mover Nodes

Do the following to perform a full outage for a COPAN MAID OpenVault client HA service on parallel data-mover nodes:

1. On the DMF server, disable both parallel data-mover nodes so that they will cease all COPAN MAID shelf activity:

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -d mover1
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -d mover2
```

2. Verify that there are no `dmatwc` or `dmatrc` data-mover processes running on either node. For example, the output of the following command should be empty on each parallel data-mover node:

```
ha# ps -ef | egrep 'dmatrc|dmatwc' | grep -v grep
ha#
```

If the output is not empty, you must wait for the `dmnode_admin -d` action from step 1 to complete (the entire process can take 6 minutes or longer). Rerun the `ps` command until there is no output.

3. On both parallel data-mover nodes, disable services related to an HA environment:

- RHEL:

```
ha# chkconfig cman off
ha# chkconfig pacemaker off
```

- SLES:

```
ha# chkconfig openais off
```

4. On both nodes, stop the appropriate underlying HA control services (do this simultaneously):

- RHEL:

```
ha# service cman stop
ha# service pacemaker stop
```

- SLES:

```
ha# service openais stop
```

5. Shut down both nodes.

6. Perform the required maintenance.
7. Perform component-level testing associated with the maintenance.
8. Reboot both nodes
9. On both nodes, enable services related to an HA environment:
 - RHEL:

```
ha# chkconfig cman on
ha# chkconfig pacemaker on
```
 - SLES:

```
ha# chkconfig openais on
```
10. On both nodes, start the appropriate underlying HA control services (do this simultaneously):
 - RHEL:

```
ha# service cman start
ha# service pacemaker start
```
 - SLES:

```
ha# service openais start
```
11. On either node, verify cluster status:

```
ha# crm status
```
12. On the DMF server, reenabling both nodes for COPAN MAID activity:

```
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -e mover1
dmfserver# dmnode_admin -e mover2
```


Full Outage for CXFS NFS Edge-Serving HA Service

Do the following to perform a full outage for a CXFS NFS edge-serving HA cluster:

1. Schedule the outage and notify users well in advance.
2. Stop all resources in the proper order (bottom up, see Figure 5-1 on page 46). For example, using the example procedures in this guide, you would stop the IP address alias resource groups and the clone:

```
ha# crm resource stop IPALIAS-GROUP-2
ha# crm resource stop IPALIAS-GROUP-1
ha# crm resource stop CXFS-NFS-CLONE
```

3. Disable the services related to an HA environment and CXFS from being started automatically at boot time:

- On all HA servers:

- RHEL:

```
ha# chkconfig cman off
ha# chkconfig pacemaker off
```

- SLES:

```
ha# chkconfig openais off
```

- On all CXFS servers:

```
cxfsserver# chkconfig cxfs off
cxfsserver# chkconfig cxfs_cluster off
```

- On all CXFS clients:

```
cxfsclient# chkconfig cxfs_client off
```

4. Shut down all of the HA cluster systems and the CXFS cluster systems.
5. Perform the required maintenance.
6. Perform component-level testing associated with the maintenance.
7. Reboot all of the HA cluster systems and the CXFS cluster systems.
8. Enable the services related to CXFS to be started automatically at boot time and start them immediately as follows:

- On all CXFS servers:

```
cxfsserver# chkconfig cxfs_cluster on
cxfsserver# chkconfig cxfs on
```

```
cxfsserver# service cxfs_cluster start
cxfsserver# service cxfs start
```

- On all CXFS clients:

```
cxfsclient# chkconfig cxfs_client on
```

```
cxfsclient# service cxfs_client start
```

- Verify CXFS cluster functionality:

```
cxfsserver# /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_admin -c status
```

9. On the NFS edge-servering node, disable the `cxfs_client` service from being started automatically at boot time and stop the currently running service immediately:

```
edge# chkconfig cxfs_client off
```

```
edge# service cxfs_client stop
```

10. On the HA servers, disable the appropriate underlying HA control service from being started automatically at boot time and stop the currently running service immediately:

- RHEL:

```
ha# chkconfig cman on
ha# chkconfig pacemaker on
```

```
ha# service cman start
ha# service pacemaker start
```

- SLES:

```
ha# chkconfig openais on
```

```
ha# service openais start
```

11. Verify the HA cluster status:

```
ha# crm status
```

12. Start resources in the correct order (top-down). For example:

```
ha# crm resource stop CXFS-NFS-CLONE
ha# crm resource stop IPALIAS-GROUP-1
ha# crm resource stop IPALIAS-GROUP-2
```

13. Move the resources to the correct locations. For example:

```
ha# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-1 node1
ha# crm resource move IPALIAS-GROUP-2 node2
```

14. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative `move` command above. For example:

```
ha# crm resource unmove IPALIAS-GROUP-1
ha# crm resource unmove IPALIAS-GROUP-2
```

Full Outage for DMF HA Service

Do the following to perform a full outage for a DMF HA cluster::

1. Schedule the outage and notify users well in advance.
2. Stop all resources in the proper order (bottom-up, see Figure 6-1 on page 62). Using the example procedures in this guide, you would stop the group:

```
ha# crm resource stop DMF-GROUP
```

3. Disable the services related to an HA environment and CXFS (if applicable) from being started automatically at boot time:

- On all HA servers:

- RHEL:

```
ha# chkconfig cman off
ha# chkconfig pacemaker off
```

- SLES:

```
ha# chkconfig openais off
```

- On all CXFS servers:

```
cxfsserver# chkconfig cxfs off
cxfsserver# chkconfig cxfs_cluster off
```

4. Shut down all of the HA cluster systems and any CXFS cluster systems.
5. Perform the required maintenance.
6. Perform component-level testing associated with the maintenance.
7. Reboot all of the HA cluster systems and any CXFS cluster systems.
8. Enable the following services related to CXFS (if applicable) to be started automatically at boot time and start them immediately:

- On all CXFS servers:

```
cxfsserver# chkconfig cxfs_cluster on
cxfsserver# chkconfig cxfs on

cxfsserver# service cxfs_cluster start
cxfsserver# service cxfs start
```

- On all CXFS clients:

```
cxfsclient# chkconfig cxfs_client on

cxfsclient# service cxfs_client start
```

- Verify CXFS cluster functionality:

```
cxfsserver# /usr/cluster/bin/cxfs_admin -c status
```

9. On the HA servers, enable the appropriate underlying HA control services to be started automatically at boot time and start them immediately:

- RHEL:

```
ha# chkconfig cman on
ha# chkconfig pacemaker on

ha# service cman start
ha# service pacemaker start
```

- SLES:

```
ha# chkconfig openais on
```

```
ha# service openais start
```

10. Verify HA cluster status:

```
ha# crm status
```

11. Start resources in the correct order (top-down). For example:

```
ha# crm resource start DMF-GROUP
```

12. Move the resources to the correct locations:

```
ha# crm resource move DMF-GROUP node1
```

Note: Keep in mind any relocation restrictions.

13. Remove the implicit location constraints imposed by the administrative move command above:

```
ha# crm resource unmove DMF-GROUP
```


Troubleshooting

This chapter discusses the following:

- "Diagnosing Problems" on page 251
- "Failover Testing Strategies" on page 258
- "Corrective Actions" on page 262

For more information, see the documentation listed in "About this Guide".

Diagnosing Problems

If you notice problems, do the following:

- "Monitor the Status Output" on page 251
- "Verify the Configuration in Greater Detail" on page 252
- "Match Status Events To Error Messages" on page 252
- "Verify `chkconfig` Settings" on page 252
- "Diagnose the Problem Resource" on page 254
- "Examine Application-Specific Problems that Impact HA" on page 254
- "Test the STONITH Capability" on page 254
- "Gather Troubleshooting Data" on page 255
- "Use SGI Knowledgebase" on page 258

Monitor the Status Output

Use the `crm status` command to determine the current status of the cluster and monitor it for problems.

Verify the Configuration in Greater Detail

Execute the `crm_verify(8)` command with increasing numbers of `-v` options for more detail, such as:

```
ha# crm_verify -LVVVVVV
```

Note: If you run `crm_verify` before STONITH is enabled, you will see errors. Errors similar to the following may be ignored if STONITH is intentionally disabled and will go away after STONITH is reenabled (line breaks shown here for readability):

```
crm_verify[182641]: 2008/07/11_16:26:54 ERROR: unpack_operation:  
Specifying on_fail=fence and stonith-enabled=false makes no sense
```

Match Status Events To Error Messages

Match the events listed in the `crm_verify` output with the failed action and the host on which the action failed. To find the specific problem, view messages in the log files. See "Examine Log Files" on page 24.

Verify `chkconfig` Settings

Verify the `chkconfig` settings for the following services when used in an HA cluster:

- "Off" on page 253
- "On" on page 253
- "Optionally On" on page 253

Off

The following services must be `off` if used (most services):

```
acpid (RHEL)
cxfs_client
dmf
dmfman
dmfsoap
nfs (RHEL)
nfsserver (SLES)
openvault
smb
nmb
winbind
```

On

The following services must be `on` if used:

- RHEL:

```
cman
cxfs
cxfs_cluster
nfslock
pacemaker
```

- SLES:

```
cxfs
cxfs_cluster
openais
logd
```

Optionally On

The following service may optionally may be `on`:

```
tmf (if used)
```

Diagnose the Problem Resource

To diagnose problems at the application level, put the cluster into maintenance mode. You might have to stop the appropriate underlying HA control services on all nodes (`cman` and `pacemaker` on RHEL nodes or `openais` on SLES nodes) and start/stop resources manually.



Caution: Ensure that you do not start a resource on multiple nodes. Verify that a resource is not already up on another node before you start it.

Examine Application-Specific Problems that Impact HA

Using HA can highlight existing problems for the applications that are being managed. For more information about diagnosing application-specific problems, see the manuals listed in “About this Guide”.

Test the STONITH Capability

To test the STONITH capability, do the following:

1. Reset a given node from another node, using one of the following methods:

- Requires that STONITH is defined in the CIB:

```
ha# crm node fence node_to_be_reset
```

For example, to reset `node1` from `node2`:

```
node2# crm node fence node1
```

- Independent of the CIB configuration:

```
ha# ipmitool -I lan -U admin -P admin -H bmc_IP_of_node_to_be_reset power reset
```

For example, to reset `node1` (whose BMC has an IP address of `128.162.232.79`) from `node2`:

```
node2# ipmitool -I lan -U admin -P admin -H 128.162.232.79 power reset
```

Note: Some BMC hardware may require `-I lanplus`.

2. Verify that the specified node was reset and was able to successfully complete a reboot.

Gather Troubleshooting Data

If you need to report problems to SGI Support, do the following to gather important troubleshooting data:

- "Collect System Configuration Information" on page 255
- "Collect System Logs" on page 256
- "Collect HA Cluster Information" on page 256
- "Collect SGI Service-Specific Information" on page 257
- "Generate a Kernel Crash Dump" on page 257

When you contact SGI Support, you will be provided with information on how and where to upload the collected information files for SGI analysis.

Collect System Configuration Information

Run the following commands as `root` on every node in the cluster in order to gather system configuration information:

- RHEL:

```
rhel# /usr/sbin/system_info_gather -Avv -n
```

- SLES:

```
sles# /usr/sbin/system_info_gather -Avv -n  
sles# /sbin/supportconfig
```

The `system_info_gather` script will print information to a time-stamped file named using the following format:

```
yyyymmdd_hhmmss-hostname-inventory[options]
```

For example, for output gathered on October 17, 2013, for a host named `myserver` using the `-Avv` options:

```
20131017_103317-myserver.mycompany.com-inventoryA2
```

Collect System Logs

Collect any other system log files that may contain information about `corosync/pacemaker` or the services included in the HA configuration (if not otherwise gathered by the above tools).

Collect HA Cluster Information

To collect HA cluster information, use the following commands:

- RHEL: `crm_report(8)`
- SLES: `hb_report(8)`

The commands use a similar format:

```
ha# command -f "from_time" [-t "to_time"] [destination_directory]
```

where:

- *command* is either `crm_report` (RHEL) or `hb_report` (SLES)
- *from_time* and *to_time* are in the format `YYYY-MM-DD H:M:S`. If you omit the `-t` option, the command collects data up to the present.
- *destination_directory* is the destination directory. If you omit this argument, the command will use its own naming convention for the compressed tarball:

- RHEL default:

```
pcmk-date.tar.bz2
```

For example, the tarball will be named `pcmk-Tue-10-Dec-2013.tar.bz2` if you execute the following command on 10 December 2013:

```
rhel# crm_report -f "2013-12-09 08:00"
```

- SLES default:

```
hb_report-date.tar.bz2
```

For example, the tarball will be named `hb_report-Tue-10-Dec-2013.tar.bz2` if you execute the following command on 10 December 2013:

```
sles# hb_report -f "2013-12-09 08:00"
```

For more details, see the `crm_report(8)` and `hb_report(8)` man pages.

Collect SGI Service-Specific Information

Collect service-specific information. For example, run `dmcollect` for a resource group that contains DMF and `cxfsdump` for a resource group that contains CXFS. See the `dmcollect(8)` and `cxfsdump(8)` man pages for more information.

Generate a Kernel Crash Dump

Note: This procedure assumes that the appropriate `kernel-default-debuginfo` RPM is installed and that any CXFS node in the HA cluster has a fail policy that does not include `reset`.

To generate a kernel crash dump, do the following:

1. If the `totem` token value is not long enough to allow a dump to take place (which is usually the case), avoid system resets by disabling STONITH:

```
ha# crm configure property stonith-enabled=false
```

Note: Be aware of the following:

- If you disable STONITH, the resources may not fail over properly and the cluster may enter an unpredictable state.
 - With a `totem` token value that is long enough for a dump to take place, it is possible that the system may restart before the failover system recognizes the situation, which can be problematic.
-

2. Force a crash dump to occur. For example:

```
ha# echo 1 > /proc/sysrq-trigger
```

3. If you disabled STONITH in step 1, reenable it:

```
ha# crm configure property stonith-enabled=true
```

4. Package up the kernel crash dump:

```
ha# /usr/sbin/sgi_collect_dump
```

Use SGI Knowledgebase

If you encounter problems and have an SGI support contract, you can use the SGI Knowledgebase tool to search for information:

1. Log in to Supportfolio Online:
`https://support.sgi.com/login`
2. Click on **Search the SGI Knowledgebase**.
3. Select the type of search you want to perform.

If you need further assistance, contact SGI Support.

Failover Testing Strategies

Before performing any sort of failover testing, do the following so that you can predict the expected results and examine the actual results:

1. Verify the state of the HA cluster:
 - a. Check the resource fail counts:
`ha# crm status failcounts`
 - b. If there has been a failure, ensure that the issue that caused a resource failure has been resolved.
 - c. Reset the individual resource fail counts on the required nodes:
`ha# crm resource failcount resourcePRIMITIVE delete nodename`
 - d. Clear any implicit location constraints that may have been created for the resource group by a previous administrative `move` command:
`ha# crm resource unmove resourceGROUP`
2. Clearly delineate the start of each test in the logs by using the `logger(1)` command. For example:
`ha# logger "TEST START - testdescription".`

Note: The HBA tests presume that the system has redundant Fibre Channel HBA paths to storage.

Table 34-1 describes failover testing strategies.

Table 34-1 Failover Tests

Test Type	Action	Expected Result
Administrative failover	<p>Move the individual resource or resource group to the failover node:</p> <pre>ha# crm resource move resourcePRIMITIVE failover_node</pre> <p>or:</p> <pre>ha# crm resource move resourceGROUP failover_node</pre>	<p>The individual resource or the resource group moves to the failover node.</p> <p>Occasionally, filesystems may fail to dismount cleanly or in a timely fashion, thus preventing an administrative move from occurring cleanly. In this case, the active node will likely be reset when a <code>stop</code> operation passes its timeout limit.</p> <hr/> <p>Note: Remember that longer resource <code>stop</code> operation timeouts may result in longer failover times, and shorter resource <code>stop</code> operation timeouts may result in more frequent system reset events.</p>
System reboot	<p>Reboot the active node:</p> <pre>active# reboot</pre>	<p>All resources running on the rebooted server should move to the failover node</p>
Simulated system crash	<p>Reset the active node</p>	<p>All resources running on the node that was reset should move to the failover node</p>
Simulated NFS daemon failure	<p>Stop the NFS server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RHEL: <pre>rhel# service nfs stop</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SLES: <pre>sles# service nfsserver stop</pre>	<p>The resources should move to the failover node due to a monitor operation failure for the <code>nfsserver</code> resource</p>
Simulated filesystem failure	<p>Unmount the filesystem:</p> <pre>ha# umount filesystem</pre>	<p>The resources should move to the failover node due to a monitor operation failure for the <code>Filesystem</code> resource</p>

Test Type	Action	Expected Result
Single simulated HBA failure	<p>Disable the port for the Fibre Channel HBA. For example:</p> <pre>brocade> portdisable <i>portnumber</i></pre>	<p>A device failover will not actually occur until I/O is attempted via the failed HBA path. An XVM failover to an alternate path should occur after I/O is performed on the system.</p> <hr/> <p>Note: Remember to reenble the port after the test. For example:</p> <pre>brocade> portenable <i>portnumber</i></pre> <hr/>
Multiple simulated HBA failures	<p>Disable the port for the Fibre Channel HBA. For example:</p> <pre>brocade> portdisable <i>portnumber</i></pre> <p>Repeat for every HBA port on the system.</p>	<p>The server should be reset after I/O is performed on the system. There will likely be multiple monitor operation failures for various resources followed by a <code>stop</code> operation failure, which will result in a system reset and a forced XVM failover.</p> <hr/> <p>Note: Remember to reenble the port after the test. For example:</p> <pre>brocade> portenable <i>portnumber</i></pre> <hr/>

Corrective Actions

The following are corrective actions:

- "Recovering from an Incomplete Failover" on page 262
- "Recovering from a CIB Corruption" on page 263
- "Clearing the Failcounts After a Severe Error" on page 263

Recovering from an Incomplete Failover

After an incomplete failover, in which one or more of the individual resources are not started and the cluster can no longer provide high availability, you must do the following to restore functionality:

1. Put the cluster into maintenance mode:

```
ha# crm configure property maintenance-mode=true
```

2. Determine which individual resources have failcounts:

```
ha# crm resource failcount resourcePRIMITIVE show node
```

Repeat for each individual resource on each node.

3. Troubleshoot the failed resource operations. Examine the log files (see "Examine Log Files" on page 24) and application logs around the time of the operation failures in order to deduce why they failed. Then deal with those causes.
4. Ensure that all of the individual resources are working properly.
5. Remove the failcounts found in step 2:

```
ha# crm resource failcount failed_resourcePRIMITIVE delete node
```

Repeat this for each individual failed resource on each node.

6. Remove error messages:

```
ha# crm resource cleanup failed_resourcePRIMITIVE node
```

Repeat this for each individual failed resource on each node.

7. Return the cluster to managed status, enter the following:

```
ha# crm configure property maintenance-mode=false
```

Recovering from a CIB Corruption

Note: This procedure assumes that you have a good backup copy of the CIB that contains only static configuration information, as directed in "Backing Up the CIB" on page 222.

Do the following to recover from a CIB corruption:

1. Erase the existing corrupt CIB:

```
ha# crm configure erase
```

2. Load a new CIB from the backup copy:

```
ha# crm configure load replace CIB.xxxxxx
```

For example, for the copy made on August 24 (CIB.20100824-130236):

```
ha# crm configure load replace CIB.20100824-130236
```

For more information, see the SUSE *High Availability Guide* and the `cibadmin(8)` man page.

Clearing the Failcounts After a Severe Error

Under certain circumstances, a severe failure will cause the failcount for the individual resources to be set to `INFINITY`. This means that the individual resources cannot run on a specific node again until the failcount is cleared, which requires administrative action. See "Clearing the Resource Failcount" on page 222.

Glossary

active/active cluster

An HA cluster in which multiple nodes are able to run disjoint sets of resources, with each node serving as a backup for another node's resources in case of node failure.

active/passive cluster

An HA cluster in which all of the resources run on one node and one or more other nodes are the failover nodes in case the first node fails.

active node

The node on which resources are running.

BMC

Baseboard management controller, a system controller used in resetting x86_64 systems.

CIB

Cluster information base, used to define the HA cluster.

clone

A resource that is active on more than one node.

control services

The set of underlying services that control the cluster, which vary by operating system:

- RHEL:
 - CMAN
 - Corosync
 - Pacemaker
- SLES:
 - OpenAIS
 - Corosync
 - Pacemaker

COPAN MAID

Power-efficient long-term data storage based on an enterprise massive array of idle disks (MAID) platform.

Corosync

The infrastructure that provides core messaging and membership functionality

CXFS

Clustered XFS.

CXFS NFS edge-serving

A configuration in which CXFS client nodes can export data with NFS.

DCP

Drive control program.

DMF Manager

A web-based tool you can use to deal with day-to-day DMF operational issues and focus on work flow.

edge-serving

See *CXFS NFS edge-serving*.

fail policy

A parameter defined in the CIB that determines what happens when a resource fails.

failover node

The node on which resources will run if the active node fails or if they are manually moved by the administrator. Also known as the *passive node* or *standby node*.

fencing

The method that guarantees a known cluster state when communication to a node fails or actions on a node fail. (This is *node-level fencing*, which differs from the concept of *I/O fencing* in CXFS.)

HA

High availability, the state in which resources fail over from one node to another without disrupting services for clients.

HA filesystem

A filesystem that will be made highly available according to the instructions in this guide.

HA service

The set of resources and resource groups that can fail over from one node to another in an HA cluster. The HA service is usually associated with an IP address. See also *non-HA service*.

High Availability Extension

SUSE Linux Enterprise product for HA.

IPMI

Intelligent Platform Management Interface, a system reset method for x86_64 systems.

ISSP

InfiniteStorage Software Platform, an SGI software distribution.

LCP

library control program.

LSB

Linux Standard Base.

monitor operation

See *probe monitor operation* and *standard monitor operation*.

mover1

In the examples in this guide, the initial parallel data-mover node (which will later become a node in the HA cluster) which will be the initial owner node of shelves 0 and 1. See also *mover2*.

mover2

In the examples in this guide, the alternate parallel data-mover node in the HA cluster (which will later become a node in the HA cluster) which will be the initial owner node of shelves 2 and 3. See also *mover1*.

node1

In the examples in this guide, the initial host (which will later become a node in the HA cluster) on which all of the filesystems will be mounted and on which all tape drives and libraries are accessible. See also *node2*.

node2

In the examples in this guide, the alternate host in the HA cluster other than the first node (*node1*). See also *node1*.

non-HA service

A service such as DMF before an HA environment is applied. See also *HA service*.

NSM

Network Status Monitor.

OCF

Open Cluster Framework.

OpenVault

A mounting service used by DMF.

owner node

The node that DMF will use to perform migrations and recalls on a given shelf. The node on which you run `ov_copan` becomes the owner node of that shelf. In an HA environment, ownership is transferred as part of failover.

physvol

XVM physical volume.

primitive

Used to define a resource in the CIB.

probe monitor operation

A `monitor` operation that checks to see if the resource is already running.

resource

An application that is managed by HA software.

resource agent

The software that allows an application to be highly available without modifying the application itself.

resource group

A set of resources that are colocated on the same node and ordered to start and stop serially. The resources in a resource group will fail over together as a set.

resource stickiness

An HA concept that determines whether a resource should migrate to another node or stay on the node on which it is currently running.

serverdir directory

A directory dedicated to holding OpenVault's database and logs within a highly available filesystem in the DMF resource group.

SOAP

Simple Object Access Protocol

split cluster

A situation in which cluster membership divides into multiple clusters, each claiming ownership of the same filesystems, which can result in filesystem data corruption. Also known as *split-brain syndrome*.

standard monitor operation

A `monitor` operation that periodically verifies that the resource continues to run.

STONITH

Shoot the other node in the head, the facility that guarantees cluster state by fencing non-responsive or failing nodes.

TMF

Tape Management Facility, a mounting service used by DMF.

XFS

A filesystem implementation type for the Linux operating system. It defines the format that is used to store data on disks managed by the filesystem.

WSDL

Web Service Definition Language

XVM

Volume manager for XFS filesystems (local XVM) and CXFS filesystems.

Index

A

- acpid
 - chkconfig and, 253
- active/passive cluster, 4
- administrative tasks
 - CIB backup copy, 27
 - CIFS, 222
 - cleaning up the local resource state, 223
 - clearing the fail count, 222
 - log files, 222
 - manual system reset, 236
 - number of historical files, 223
 - stopping HA service, 235
- application-specific problems, 254
- applications that depend on CXFS filesystems, 94

B

- back up the CIB, 27
- backups and HA, 15
- base object, 125
- best practices, 15

C

- CACHE_DIR, 124
- chkconfig, 42
- chkconfig settings, 252
- CIB recovery, 263
- CIFS, 222
- clearing failcounts, 263
- cluster information base (CIB) backup, 27
- cman
 - chkconfig and, 253

- configuration tools, 23
- configuring COPAN MAID for HA, 72
- configuring CXFS NFS edge-serving for an HA environment, 45
- configuring DMF for an HA environment, 61
- consensus, 28, 41
- COPAN MAID
 - cluster resources, 72
 - copan_ov_client resource agent, 2
 - requirements, 81
 - testing the non-HA service, 83
- COPAN MAID failover example, 7
- COPAN OpenVault client resource moving, 28
- copan_ov_client, 2
 - moving, 225
- copan_ov_client template, 89
- core file identification, 29
- core membership timeout, 28
- corruption of CIB, 263
- crm, 23
- crm status and monitoring for problems, 27, 220
- crm_verify, 23, 252
- crm_verify -LV and monitoring for problems, 27, 220
- CXFS
 - applications that depend on CXFS, 94
 - colocation, 94
 - cxfs resource agent, 2
 - licensing, 33
 - nodes for failover, 93
 - number of nodes in the cluster, 93
 - relocation support, 94
 - requirements, 93
 - start-ordering, 94
 - start/stop issues, 95
 - system reset, 94

- testing the cxfs resource, 120
- testing the non-HA service, 95
- cxfs
 - chkconfig and, 253
 - CXFS heartbeat timeout, 28
 - CXFS NFS edge-serving
 - testing the non-HA service, 108
 - CXFS NFS edge-serving an HA environment, 45
 - CXFS NFS edge-serving failover example, 4
 - CXFS NFS edge-serving node and NFS client, 29
 - cxfs template, 96
 - cxfs-client-clone template, 103
 - cxfs-client-fs, 2
 - cxfs-client-nfsserver, 3
 - cxfs-client-nfsserver template, 110
 - cxfs-client-smnotify template, 113
 - cxfs-nfs-clone template, 117
 - cxfs_client
 - chkconfig and, 253
 - cxfs_cluster
 - chkconfig and, 253
- D**
 - debugging, 27, 220
 - default-resource-failure-stickiness, 25
 - Disk Name values must be unique, 167
 - DMF
 - active/passive cluster , 4
 - cluster resources, 61
 - configuration, 126
 - configuring the Filesystem resource
 - managed user filesystem, 148
 - connectivity to libraries and drives, 123
 - DMF client SOAP service requirements, 139
 - DMF Manager requirements, 133
 - dmf resource agent, 3
 - dmfman resource agent, 3
 - dmfsoap resource agent, 3
 - licensing, 33
 - requirements, 123
 - testing the dmf resource, 130
 - testing the dmfman resource, 135
 - testing the dmfsoap resource, 140
 - testing the non-HA service, 125
- E**
 - error message verbosity, 41
 - error messages in log files, 252
 - /etc/corosync/corosync.conf, 41
 - /etc/exports, 108, 175
 - exfs-client template, 100
- F**
 - fail count clearing, 222
 - failcount values, 27
 - failcounts, 263

failover, 25
 failover nodes, 93
 failover testing strategies, 258
 fence_ipmilan template, 143
 fencing
 See "STONITH", 25
 fencing terminology (HA vs CXFS), 21
 Filesystem resource
 managed user filesystem, 148
 OpenVault serverdir, 148
 Filesystem template, 147
 filesystems
 testing the Filesystem resource, 146
 fully qualified domain name, 16

H

HA control services
 stopping the service, 235
 HA service
 terminology, 1
 hardware requirements, 34
 heartbeat timeout, 28
 historical files, 223
 HOME_DIR, 124
 hostname consistency, 16

I

I/O fencing and system reset, 94
 implicit constraint, 28
 incomplete failover, 262
 INFINITY, 28
 INTERFACE, 124
 introduction, 1
 IP address alias, 151
 IPaddr2 template, 154
 IPALIAS-GROUP template, 157
 ipmi template, 159
 ISSP

release note, 2
 software, 2

J

JOURNAL_DIR, 124

K

kernel dump, 257
 kernel.core_pattern, 29
 Knowledgebase, 258

L

licensing requirements, 33
 local XVM
 lxvm resource agent, 3
 requirements, 167
 testing lxvm, 169
 testing the non-HA service, 167
 log files, 222
 logd
 chkconfig and, 253
 logging, 41
 lxvm resource agent, 3
 lxvm template, 170

M

MAID shelf, 81
 MailTo resource, 26
 MailTo template, 173
 maintenance mode, 221
 manual system reset, 236
 Messages, 222
 monitoring for problems, 27, 220

- mounting service
 - See "OpenVault or TMF", 183
- move and unmove, 28
- MOVE_FS, 124
- moving the COPAN OpenVault client resource, 28
- mtcp_hb_period, 28

N

- networking and HA, 15
- NFS
 - configuration for an HA environment, 177
 - testing the nfsserver resource, 178
 - testing the non-HA service, 175
- nfs
 - chkconfig and, 253
- NFS client and CXFS NFS edge-serving node, 29
- NFS client and server, 29
- nfslock
 - chkconfig and, 253
- nfsserver
 - chkconfig and, 253
- nfsserver template, 180
- nmb
 - chkconfig and, 253
 - testing the nmb resource, 202
- nmb template, 203
- node object, 125
- node-level fencing
 - See "STONITH", 25
- nodes for failover, 93
- non-HA service configuration and testing
 - COPAN MAID, 83
 - CXFS, 95
 - CXFS NFS edge-serving , 108
 - DMF, 125
 - DMF Manager, 133
 - DMF SOAP, 139
 - local XVM, 167
 - NFS , 175
 - OpenVault, 184

- TMF, 207
- number of nodes in the cluster, 93

O

- openais
 - chkconfig and, 253
- OpenVault
 - configuration for an HA environment, 186
 - configuring the Filesystem resource
 - serverdir, 148
 - openvault resource agent, 3
 - requirements, 183
 - serverdir directory, 183
 - testing the non-HA service, 184
 - testing the openvault resource, 193
 - wildcard and, 184
- openvault
 - chkconfig and, 253
 - openvault template, 195
 - ownership of a MAID shelf, 81

P

- pacemaker
 - chkconfig and, 253
- Parallel Data-Mover Option
 - DMF configuration and, 128
 - licensing, 33
 - OpenVault configuration and, 191
 - requirements, 34
- passive cluster, 4
- physvol Disk Name values must be unique, 167
- PID in core files, 29
- ping Resource, 26
- ping template, 163
- preliminary testing tasks, 258

R

- redundancy and HA, 15
- release note, 2
- relocation support for CXFS, 94
- reporting problems to SGI, 255
- requirements
 - COPAN MAID , 81
 - CXFS, 93
 - DMF, 123
 - DMF client SOAP service, 139
 - DMF Manager, 133
 - hardware, 34
 - IP address alias, 151
 - licensing, 33
 - local XVM, 167
 - OpenVault, 183
 - Parallel Data-Mover Option, 34
 - software version, 34
 - system reset, 34
 - time synchronization, 34
 - TMF, 207
- reset
 - CXFS and, 94
 - enabling, 78
 - manual, 236
 - requirements, 25, 34
- resource
 - nfserver configuration, 177
 - nmb configuration, 200
 - openvault configuration, 186
 - smb configuration, 200
 - terminology, 1
- resource agents
 - provided by SGI, 2
 - terminology, 1
- resource configuration
 - Filesystem
 - managed user filesystem, 148
 - OpenVault serverdir, 148
- resource group
 - colocation and ordering, 25
 - terminology, 1
- resource stickiness, 25
- resource templates
 - copan_ov_client, 89
 - cxfs, 96
 - cxfs-client-clone, 103
 - cxfs-client-nfserver, 110
 - cxfs-client-smnotify, 113
 - cxfs-nfs-clone, 117
 - dmf, 131
 - DMF-GROUP, 122
 - dmfman, 136
 - dmfsoap, 141
 - exfs-client, 100
 - fence_ipmilan, 143
 - Filesystem, 147
 - IPaddr2, 154
 - IPALIAS-GROUP, 157
 - ipmi, 159
 - lxvm, 170
 - MailTo, 173
 - naming conventions, 19
 - nfserver, 180
 - nmb, 203
 - openvault, 195
 - ping, 163
 - smb, 204, 217
 - tmf, 211
 - winbind, 217
- resource testing
 - cxfs, 120
 - dmf, 130
 - dmfman, 135
 - dmfsoap, 140
 - Filesystem, 146
 - IPaddr2, 152
 - lxvm, 169
 - nfserver, 178
 - openvault, 193
 - smb and nmb, 202
 - tmf, 209

restart the OpenVault server, 224
restore, 126

S

Samba

- configuration for an HA Environment, 200
- testing the non-HA service, 199

score calculation, 25

SERVER_NAME, 124

serverdir directory for OpenVault, 183

service

- terminology, 1

SGI InfiniteStorage Software Platform

- See "ISSP", 2

SGI ISSP High Availability software, 2

SGI Knowledgebase, 258

SGI products, 1

shelf on MAID, 81

short hostname, 16

smb

- chkconfig and, 253
- testing the smb resource, 202

smb template, 204, 217

software upgrades, 227

software version requirements, 34

spaces in resource names, 19

SPOOL_DIR, 124

standard service configuration and testing

- Samba, 199

start/stop issues and CXFS, 95

status output, 251

STONITH

- enabling, 78
- requirements, 25, 34
- stonith command, 236
- testing ipmi, 79

STONITH capability testing, 254

stonith command, 254

stopping underlying HA control services, 235

STORE_DIR, 124

Supportfolio, 258

sysctl, 28

system configuration and HA, 15

system reset and I/O fencing, 94

system reset enabling, 78

T

testing

- COPAN MAID non-HA service, 83
- CXFS NFS edge-serving non-HA service, 108
- CXFS non-HA service, 95
- CXFS resource, 120
- DMF Manager standard service, 133
- DMF non-HA service, 125
- dmf resource, 130
- DMF SOAP standard service, 139
- dmfman resource, 135
- dmfsoap resource, 140
- Filesystem resource, 146
- IPAddr2 resource, 152
- ipmi, 79
- local XVM standard service, 167
- lxvm resource, 169
- NFS non-HA service, 175
- nfserver resource, 178
- nmb resource, 202
- openvault resource, 193
- OpenVault standard service, 184
- Samba serving non-HA service, 199
- smb and nmb resource, 202
- TMF non-HA service, 207
- tmf resource, 209

testing COPAN MAID for an HA environment, 72

testing CXFS NFS edge-serving for an HA environment, 45

testing DMF for an HA environment, 61

testing strategies, 258

time synchronization, 34

TMF

- configuration for an HA environment, 208
- requirements, 207
- testing the non-HA service, 207
- testing the tmf resource, 209
- tmf resource agent, 3

tmf

- chkconfig and, 254
- tmf template, 211
- TMP_DIR, 124
- token, 41
- token consensus, 28
- tools, 23
- tools for configuration, 23
- totem consensus, 41
- totem token, 28, 41
- troubleshooting
 - CIB recovery, 263
 - clearing failcounts, 265
 - error message, 252
 - general troubleshooting, 251
 - incomplete failover, 262
 - reporting problems to SGI, 255
 - using SGI Knowledgebase, 258

U

- unmove and move, 28

- upgrades, 227
- /usr/lib/dmf/dmfman_setup_ha, 134

V

- /var/log/messages, 222
- verbosity and high—availability commands, 24
- virtual IP address
 - requirements, 151
 - testing the IPaddr2 resource, 152
- volume names must be unique, 167

W

- wildcard and OpenVault, 184
- winbind
 - chkconfig and, 253
 - winbind template, 217

X

- XCOPY, 222
- xfsdump and xfsrestore, 126